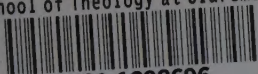
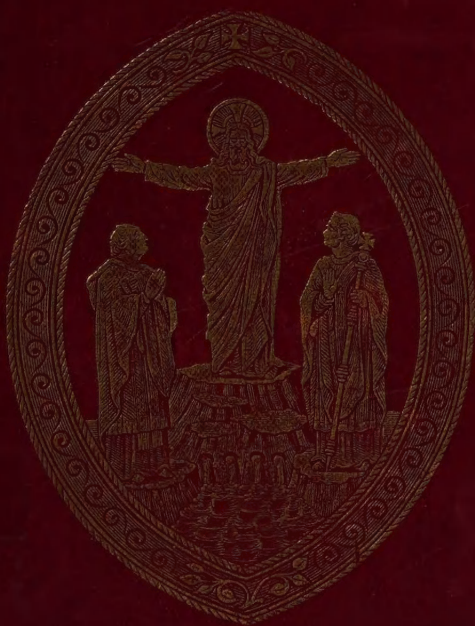


School of Theology at Claremont



1001 1398696

The Religion  
A Manual of Instruction  
for Members of the  
Anglican Church



# Historical Tales.

BY THE LATE REV. A. D. CRAKE, B.A.

"We know, by experience, that boys who care little for reading as a rule, eagerly devour these Stories of Church History."—*Church Review*.

Uniformly Bound in Cloth Gilt, 2/6 each.

**Fairleigh Hall.** A Tale of Oxfordshire during the Civil Wars. New and Revised Edition. "It is from beginning to end full of interest; the historical details are all accurate, and the book can be warmly commended."—*Standard*.

**The Heir of Treberne.** A Tale of the Devonshire Rebellion. "We cordially recommend our readers to get the book as a Christmas Present for their boys, and to borrow it from them to read for themselves."—*Church Review*.

**The Doomed City:** or, The Last Days of Durocina. A Tale of the Anglo-Saxon Conquest and the Mission of Augustine. "It gives a vivid picture of the events of which it treats, and boys who are fond of history cannot fail to be pleased with it."—*Literary World*.

**Evanus.** A Tale of the Days of Constantine the Great. New and Revised Edition. "Evanus is simple and natural, yet so seasoned with adventures and trials, deeds of heroism, and feats of skill, that it cannot fail to prove attractive to the class of readers for whom it has been specially written."—*Church Review*.

**Æmilus.** A Story of the Decian and Valerian Persecutions. New and Revised Edition. "Makes the youngest reader able to understand something of the violence of the heathen persecutions, and of the dauntless courage with which Christianity inspired even younger boys, and made them ready to die for the faith."—*Church Bells*.

**The Last Abbot of Glastonbury.** A Tale of the Dissolution of the Monasteries. New and Revised Edition. "Young people will learn the truth of the matter sooner through fiction than history, and fiction like Mr. CRAKE'S will serve in many an instance to prepare its readers to become intelligent students of the historian of the future."—*Athenæum*.

**The Victor's Laurel.** A Tale of the Tenth Persecution in Italy. New and Revised Edition. "We are inclined to think this the very best of Mr. CRAKE'S books."—*Living Church*.

**Stories from Old English History.** "Compiled with excellent taste, and deeply interesting; no better book of its kind could be given to school-boys."—*Saturday Review*.

Uniformly Bound in Cloth Gilt, 2/- each.

**A Sheaf of Yule Log Stories.** A collection of Christmas Stories.

**The Camp on the Severn.** A Tale of the Tenth Persecution in Britain.

**Stories of the old Saints, and the Anglo-Saxon Church.**

A USEFUL BOOK TO EVERY READER OF  
"THE CATHOLIC RELIGION."

---

Cloth Boards, Red Edges, 2/6.

Stiff Paper Wrapper, 1/6.

---

# The Congregation in Church.

A Plain Guide to reverent and intelligent participation in the Public Services of Holy Church.

---

"If the booklet were in wide circulation, it would save us much trouble, so many are the questions which it answers that come to us for solution several times yearly."—*Church Times*.

"Purchasers would get for their money a very great deal of the sort of information of which they are ignorant, but are too ashamed to confess their ignorance to their Parish Priest, and worry the Editors of Church Periodicals to enlighten them."—*Church Review*.

*A Clergyman writes* :—"It is the best book on Catholic Ritual and Directions that I ever read."

*Another writes* :—"A capital book . . . I have spoken of it to several brother Priests."

*Another writes* :—"Most useful, and I hope it will have a wide circulation."

*Another writes* :—"Your able and interesting little work."

— 222 PAGES, 1/6 & 2/6. —

---



The Library  
SCHOOL OF THEOLOGY  
AT CLAREMONT

WEST FOOTHILL AT COLLEGE AVENUE  
CLAREMONT, CALIFORNIA



5139  
53  
1894

# The Catholic Religion

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION

FOR MEMBERS OF THE

## Anglican Church

BY THE

REV. VERNON STALEY,

CHAPLAIN PRIEST OF

THE HOUSE OF MERCY, CLEWER.

WITH A PREFACE

BY THE

REV. T. T. CARTER,

HON. CANON OF CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD ;

AND WARDEN OF THE HOUSE OF MERCY, CLEWER.

---

Fourth Edition.

---

MOWBRAY AND CO.

OXFORD :  
St. Aldate's Street.

LONDON :  
Farringdon St., E.C.

NEW YORK : JAMES POTT AND CO.

1894.

A. B. Jewett.

Theology Library

SCHOOL OF THEOLOGY  
AT CLAREMONT  
California

## PREFACE.

---

THE Church of England has been the witness for God in this land for about fifteen centuries, through all changes, all crises of trial and suffering, and in its main essential principles, it is the same now it has been from its beginning, when Augustine and Aidan, and other saintly missionaries, brought Christianity to our Saxon forefathers,<sup>\*</sup> and Alfred the Great defended it against the heathen Danes, till they too were received into the bosom of the Church.

The Church has passed through great varieties of outward circumstance, equally with the English nation itself. For many centuries it was subject to the Papal See—then for a time the State ruled it, when the State assumed its most absolute form. When the Puritans attained power, the Church was altogether suppressed and its services proscribed—it was re-established at the

<sup>\*</sup> This is not meant to ignore the existence of the *British* Church, previously settled in this country. See pp. 65, etc., of this work. T. T. C.

Restoration, but soon after, drained of its best blood through the secession of the Non-Jurors, then ensued a long period of spiritual decline. At last there came a revival through the Evangelical movement, and of late years a still greater quickening through the Oxford movement, which has stirred the whole body of the Church with new life and power. Yet during all these eventful changes the Church never lost the grace of the Apostolic ministry, nor the Sacraments, nor the Catholic Creeds, nor even a real measure of its old constitutional government.

Moreover, the Church of England has learnt valuable lessons from the various outward circumstances through which it has passed. It has retained the principle of dogmatic teaching of which Rome impressed upon it so great an example. At the revival of learning in the sixteenth century, it learned the value of free enquiry and the importance of truth on all questions as against mere authority. It imbibed quickly the incalculable benefit of the opening of the Holy Scriptures to the people through the invention of printing. It learnt tolerance through the



terrible sufferings of persecution, itself having sorely suffered, while unhappily for a while it joined in inflicting such suffering, sharing the public feeling that prevailed everywhere at the time, that such methods were the rightful means of suppressing dangerous error. It had impressed upon it with more than ordinary power the claims of the individual conscience through the Puritan movement, of which this truth formed the main groundwork. From the Evangelical revival it acquired a deepened sense of the doctrines of grace and of the soul's secret communion with God, and now the Oxford movement has brought home to us with unprecedented force the view of the Church as the mystical Body of Christ, and the life-giving grace of the Sacraments.

It is not difficult to see how these lessons, thus taught us, have affected the mind of the Church of England, have left their mark upon it, and have given it some of its most characteristic qualities of thought and feeling.

The greatest loss the Church of England has ever known is the Wesleyan secession.

It has been often shewn how that movement arose from men with strong Church tendencies, men trained in our Universities on Church principles. But the enthusiasm which so powerfully stirred them to preach the Gospel among the masses, was at the time misunderstood, and met with no sympathy in the depressed condition of the Church which was suffering from a long series of conflicts, ecclesiastical and civil. But the first design of these ardent mission-preachers was not to separate from the Church, rather to supplement its work ; but circumstances gradually drove them on beyond their original aims, and thus the largest rent from the body of the Church of England, in spite of the anxious desires of its first leaders, was unhappily consummated.

The question of the Establishment of the Church is not treated of in this volume. The question is external to the Church's life, though its life is affected by it. But the life of the Church is the same, whether established or disestablished. And its claims upon its members are the same. The Church has

been in alliance with the State ever since it was founded. It is this which has made the English nation to be a Christian nation, and as the faith it has received is the Catholic faith, it has thus become a Catholic nation. There is no doubt much to be considered on this question : but one point alone seems necessary to explain, as it touches the faith of the Church.

It is sometimes thought that the State determines the faith of the Church, because Lay Judges, appointed by the State, are joined with the Bishops in cases of Appeal from the Church Courts—those Judges being members of the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. But it has to be borne in mind that those Judges do not settle the matters in dispute of their own mind, but only as interpreting the Church's documents. The decisions are made according to what they believe the Church's documents to mean. Mistakes may thus be made, but any such mistake may be remedied by subsequent decisions. The Church's documents remain the same. They are not changed, though there may be differences of interpretation ;

even where any wrong may have been done for a time, the right may prevail at last.

This has been the case on a very important question of the present day. The decisions of the Judges on "the Ornaments' Rubric," relating to the Church's Ritual, had for some years been unfavourable to the changes lately made. Now at last these adverse decisions have been reversed, and the last judgment of the Court has sanctioned the old Catholic customs which we have inherited from early ages. The Ornaments' Rubric has at last been interpreted on true principles.

This volume exhibits what I believe to be a true view of an English Churchman's faith and practice. It has been wished simply to state the truth, without attacking others. But it is impossible to make our position clear without alluding to the causes which have separated us from the Church of Rome, and which therefore imply opposition. And so likewise with regard to those who have parted from us, and formed separate communities. There has been no wish to condemn, except so far as the mere assertion of the



truth we profess and the belief we hold, is itself a condemnation. We pray for reunion both with the divided portions of the Catholic Communion, and the dissenting bodies in England: we feel the sadness and the loss involved in these separations. We are conscious that there may be blame on our side, as well as on the side of those opposed to us. We can recognise their good while we assert our own claims. We are anxious to avoid any act or deed which might aggravate the divisions that exist, and desire rather to do all in our power, as opportunity occurs, that might tend to remedy these sad troubles. We long only that the truth may prevail, and that God may be honoured by every effort anywhere made to heal the breaches of His Zion.

Among the quotations made in this volume, those from Dr. Pusey's writings will be found to be most numerous. This has been done in the belief that from his great learning, his fulness of exposition, and his untiring labours, he is the most valuable witness to the Church's truth on the various subjects which have been discussed among us of late years, and these

discussions have embraced a very wide range of teaching.

I would add that definite doctrine, and a clear understanding of the truth, are of the utmost value in promoting a consistent Christian life. What we do and are, greatly depends on what we believe. Our life is the fruit of our faith. And it is surely the first duty of Church-people to learn as fully and as clearly as they can, what the Church teaches, and what faithful men have gathered from the authorities to which the Church directs us.

That there may be a blessing on this work; that it may be found helpful to those who are earnestly seeking to live to God, and who "ask for the old paths, where is the good way, and walk therein" that they may "find rest for their souls," is the prayer and earnest desire of the undersigned.

T. T. CARTER.

ST. JOHN'S LODGE, CLEWER.

JULY 13, 1893.

## AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

---

THE author desires to express a sense of deep obligation for the large help he has received from many sources in compiling this Manual.

First and foremost, to the Rev. T. T. Carter, Hon. Canon of Christ Church, and Warden of the House of Mercy, Clewer, to whose suggestion the work owes its existence, and who has shewn unceasing interest in its compilation, revising the whole manuscript, and making valuable corrections and numerous additions: to the Rev. William Bright, D.D., Canon of Christ Church, and Regius Professor of Ecclesiastical History in the University of Oxford, to whom the Synopsis of the work was submitted, and who, later, most kindly examined the historical matter of the Second Part of the work, making corrections and suggestions of which the author has availed himself: to

In putting forth so comprehensive a work, the Author can hardly expect to have escaped all errors. He will be grateful to have such errors pointed out to him, that he may be able to correct them, should a second edition be called for. In the necessary treatment of matters of controversy, he desires to withdraw any word which may be lacking either in charity, or in perfect fairness.

CLEWER, JULY 1, 1893.

---

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THE Author has taken the opportunity afforded by the issue of a Third Edition of this work, to make corrections in various places, and to add two new chapters on The Holy Bible, and The Christian Course.

CLEWER, OCTOBER 30, 1893.



## AUTHORITIES CONSULTED OR QUOTED.

---

- Ashwell, Lectures on the Holy Catholic Church.  
    „ MS. Notes of Lectures.  
St. Augustine, Confessions.  
Bede, Ecclesiastical History.  
Blunt, Annotated Book of Common Prayer.  
    „ Household Theology.  
Bright, Early English Church History.  
Carter, Our Lord's Early Life.  
    „ The Roman Question.  
Catéchisme du Diocèse de Paris.  
Courayer, on The Validity of English Ordinations.  
Dixon, History of the Church of England, Vol. IV.  
Döllinger, The First Age of the Church.  
    „ The Reunion of the Churches.  
Forbes, Explanation of the XXXIX Articles.  
    „ „ „ Nicene Creed.  
Gore, The Church and the Ministry.  
    „ The Mission of the Church.  
    „ Roman Catholic Claims.  
Grueber, Catechism of the Kingdom of God.  
Haddan, Apostolical Succession in the Church of England.  
Hutchings, The Person and Work of the Holy Ghost.  
Liddon, A Father in Christ; and other Sermons.  
    „ Report of the Proceedings of the Bonn Conference  
        in 1874.  
    „ Some Elements of Religion.  
Lightfoot, Leaders in the Northern Church.  
Moore, History of the Reformation.  
Newman, The Arians of the Fourth Century.  
    „ Via Media, Tracts 85, and 90.  
Priest's Prayer Book, The  
Puller, The Fast before Communion.  
    „ The Primitive Saints and the See of Rome.  
Pusey, Eirenicon, Parts I, II, and III.  
    „ The Rule of Faith.  
    „ What is of Faith as to Everlasting Punishment?  
    „ Letter to the Bishop of London.  
Trench, Medieval Church History.  
Westcott, The Gospel of Creation, in *the Epistles of St.  
        John*.  
    „ Christus Consummator.  
Wilberforce, The Doctrine of the Incarnation.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE BY CANON CARTER ... ..	iii
THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE ... ..	xi
AUTHORITIES CONSULTED OR QUOTED	xv

## Part First.

### THE CHURCH OF GOD.

#### CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION ... ..	3
---------------------	---

#### CHAPTER II.

THE FOUNDATION OF THE CHURCH ...	11
----------------------------------	----

#### CHAPTER III.

##### THE MINISTRY OF THE CHURCH.

I. The Foundation of the Ministry ...	14
II. The Apostolic Succession ... ..	19
III. Apostles and Bishops ... ..	25
IV. The Episcopate, of Divine Origin; as	30
i. The Fount of the Ministry ...	32
ii. The Bond of Unity ... ..	33
iii. The Guardian of the Truth ...	34
iv. The Instrument and Pledge of Grace ... ..	38

	PAGE
CHAPTER IV.	
GRADES AMONGST THE BISHOPS OF THE CHURCH ... ..	41

CHAPTER V.	
THE ENDS FOR WHICH THE CHURCH EXISTS.	
I. The Sphere of Grace ... ..	48
II. The Home of the Truth ... ..	49
III. The Ark of Safety ... ..	50

CHAPTER VI.	
THE DIVISIONS IN THE CHURCH ...	53

---

## Part Second.

### THE CHURCH IN ENGLAND.

CHAPTER I.	
THE CONVERSION OF ENGLAND... ..	65

CHAPTER II.	
THE SETTLEMENT OF THE ANGLO-SAXON CHURCH ... ..	74

CHAPTER III.	
THE CAUSES OF THE REFORMATION ...	78

CHAPTER IV.	
THE RESULTS OF THE REFORMATION ...	91

CHAPTER V.	
ANGLICAN ORDERS ... ..	97



CHAPTER VI.

THE APOSTOLICAL SUCCESSION IN THE SEE OF CANTERBURY ... ..	109
---	-----

CHAPTER VII.

THE BISHOPS OF THE ANGLICAN CHURCH	111
------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ANGLICAN PRINCIPLE AS TO THE TRUTH ... ..	115
--	-----

---

**Part Third.**

THE FAITH AND PRACTICE  
OF THE CHURCH.

CHAPTER I.

THE FAITH OF THE CHURCH.

I. Christian Belief ... ..	125
II. The Three Creeds ... ..	127
III. Comparison of the Creeds ... ..	130
IV. The Articles of the Christian Faith	136
i. I believe in God the Father Almighty.	
1. The Existence of God ...	136
2. The Nature of God ...	139
3. The Perfections of God ...	139
4. The Mystery of the Holy Trinity .. ..	141

	PAGE
ii. Maker of Heaven and Earth.	
1. The Creation of the Universe ... ..	143
2. The Creation of the Angels	146
3. The Fall of the Angels ...	147
4. The Creation of Man ...	148
5. The Fall of Man ... ..	149
6. The Origin of Evil ...	150
iii. I believe in Jesus Christ.	
1. The Doctrine of the Incarnation ... ..	155
2. The Purpose of the Incarnation ... ..	157
3. The Blessed Virgin Mary	158
4. The Earthly Life of Our Lord ... ..	165
5. The Passion of Our Lord	173
6. The Descent into Hell ...	180
7. The Resurrection ...	185
8. The Great Forty Days ...	189
9. The Ascension ... ..	192
10. The Return to Judgment	197
iv. I believe in the Holy Ghost	199
v. The Holy Catholic Church.	
1. The Holy Ghost in the Church ... ..	202
2. The Office of the Church	206
3. The Notes of the Church	208
vi. The Communion of Saints ...	210
vii. The Forgiveness of Sins ...	214
viii. The Resurrection of the Body and the Life Everlasting	215

## CHAPTER II.

THE COMMANDMENTS	...	...	...	219
I. Sin	...	...	...	223
II. A List of Sins against the Ten Commandments	...	...	...	224
III. The Three Notable Duties	...	...	...	229
IV. The Three Theological Virtues	...	...	...	233
V. The Four Cardinal Virtues	...	...	...	233
VI. The Precepts of the Church	...	...	...	234

## CHAPTER III.

THE SACRAMENTS	...	...	...	235
I. Holy Baptism	...	...	...	242
II. The Holy Eucharist	...	...	...	245
i. The Institution	...	...	...	245
ii. The Eucharistic Sacrifice	...	...	...	247
iii. The Eucharistic Feast	...	...	...	254
iv. Fasting Communion	...	...	...	256
III. Confirmation	...	...	...	261
IV. Penance	...	...	...	264
i. Absolution	...	...	...	264
ii. Repentance	...	...	...	268
V. Holy Order	...	...	...	271
VI. Holy Matrimony	...	...	...	273
VII. Unction	...	...	...	274

## CHAPTER IV.

PRAYER	...	...	...	277
I. The Lord's Prayer	...	...	...	281
The Invocation	...	...	...	283
i. Hallowed be Thy Name	...	...	...	284
ii. Thy Kingdom come	...	...	...	284

	PAGE
iii. Thy Will be done in earth, etc. . . . .	285
iv. Give us this day our daily bread . . . . .	286
v. And forgive us our trespasses, etc. . . . .	287
vi. And lead us not into temp- tation . . . . .	288
vii. But deliver us from evil . . .	288
The Doxology . . . . .	289

## CHAPTER V.

## THE CHRISTIAN COURSE.

I. Predestination and Election . . .	290
II. Grace and Freewill . . . . .	292
III. Regeneration . . . . .	294
IV. Conversion . . . . .	297
V. Justification . . . . .	300
VI. Sanctification . . . . .	302
VII. Final Perseverance . . . . .	303

## Part Fourth.

## APPENDIX.

## CHAPTER I.

## THE HOLY BIBLE.

I. The Inspiration of the Bible . . .	309
II. The Contents of the Bible . . . . .	312
i. The Old Testament . . . . .	312
ii. The Ecclesiastical Books . . . . .	315
iii. The New Testament . . . . .	316
III. The Bible and The Church . . . . .	319

## CHAPTER II.

WORSHIP ... ..	325
I. The Ornaments' Rubric ... ..	328
II. The Ecclesiastical Colours ... ..	333
III. Pious Customs ... ..	335
IV. The Priesthood of the Laity ... ..	337

## CHAPTER III.

I. NOTES ON THE CHURCH OFFICES.	
I. The Public Baptism of Infants ... ..	339
II. The Churching of Women ... ..	341
III. Holy Matrimony ... ..	343
IV. The Burial of the Dead ... ..	347
V. The Holy Communion ... ..	350
II. SACRAMENTAL CONFESSION ... ..	352
III. HINTS FOR A FIRST CONFESSION ... ..	355
IV. BOOKS RECOMMENDED ... ..	364

## CHAPTER IV.

I. THE CALENDAR ... ..	366
II. TABLES AND RULES FOR THE FEASTS ... ..	374
III. A TABLE OF THE VIGILS, FASTS, ETC. ... ..	375
IV. A TABLE OF KINDRED AND AFFINITY ... ..	376

---

INDEX TO ILLUSTRATIONS ... ..	377
INDEX TO AUTHORS ... ..	378
INDEX TO TEXTS ... ..	380
GENERAL INDEX ... ..	385

“ Within the Catholic Church, we hold that which hath been believed everywhere, always, and of all men: for that is truly and properly Catholic, which comprehendeth all things in general after an universal manner. And that shall we do if we follow Universality, Antiquity, Consent.

Universality shall we follow thus, if we profess that One Faith to be true, which the whole Church throughout the world acknowledgeth and confesseth.

Antiquity shall we follow, if we part not any whit from those senses which it is plain that our holy elders and fathers generally held.

Consent shall we likewise follow, if, in this very Antiquity itself, we hold the definitions and opinions of all, or at any rate almost all, the Priests and Doctors together.”

Vincent of Lerins, *against Heresy*, Ch. ii.

Part First.

---

The Church of God.





## CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTION.

**A**LMIGHTY God in His love created all things. At the head of this lower world He placed man, giving him the power to choose, to love and serve Him freely.

That this choice might be a reality, it was needful that man should have the power to reject God, and to withhold his love and service. In no other way could his will be really free. Man, thus gifted, was put on his trial. He failed, and so fell away from God.

But God's love was so great that, even though rejected by man, He would not leave him to his ruin. God pursued fallen man with a love which is as astonishing as it is touching. The history of the human race is the history of God's patient love following man, in order to bring him back to Himself.

By man's evil choice his mind became darkened, his heart polluted, and his will weakened. All along the ages we find God striving to remedy these defects, enlightening man's mind by His truth, cleansing his heart by holy inspirations, and aiding man's will by His power.

#### i.

Whilst God was thus dealing with the human race in general, He willed, in His wisdom, to

work in a more special way within a narrower circle. At first, history tells of God's particular dealings with individuals and families, as with the patriarchs; then with one nation, that of the Jews; and lastly, when Christ came, with all nations without distinction.

Taking the Old Testament as our guide, we find in early times Noah thus singled out for God's special favour. The human race had become so utterly wicked, that it was necessary to destroy it by a mighty flood. Noah and his family remained faithful; and, as a reward, God saved them in the Ark from the punishment which fell upon the godless. With Noah and his family, God made a covenant or agreement, revealing Himself, and giving them the primary laws of the human race. Thus the knowledge of the True God was preserved in the world.

But in time the descendants of Noah corrupted themselves, and then God, in His mercy, made choice of Abraham and his family. He now began to reveal Himself more fully. He promised in solemn terms that Abraham should be the founder of a great nation, and that in him all nations of the earth should be blessed. "Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him."<sup>1</sup>

The nation which sprung from Abraham was chosen by God to be His "peculiar people,"<sup>2</sup> an elect nation. The nation thus chosen consisted of the Hebrew race, commonly known as the children of Israel, or the Jews.

Shortly after the death of Abraham, a great famine spread over the land of Canaan, where

<sup>1</sup> Gen. xviii. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. xiv. 2.

the family of Abraham dwelt. To avoid this famine, the whole of his descendants, numbering seventy persons, journeyed into Egypt, and there greatly multiplied. The king of Egypt fearing that they might side with his enemies in case of war, reduced them to slavery. From this bondage God rescued His people by the hand of Moses, whom He raised up to be their leader. Under the guidance of Moses the whole nation, now great in number, was led out of Egypt into the wilderness of Sinai, and there organised to form a Church.<sup>1</sup> To this Church, the whole of the Jewish nation belonged. Thus organised, the Jewish Church received from God the Moral Law, the right of approaching Him by Sacrifices, the Divine Blessing, and above all the promise that from their midst should spring in due time the Divine Deliverer, the Incarnate God Himself.

Such were the elect people, "the Israelites, to whom pertaineth the adoption, and the glory, and the covenants, and the giving of the law, and the service of God, and the promises; whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever."<sup>2</sup>

As time went on, God raised up the prophets to be the teachers of His people, and by them made known further truths concerning Himself, His coming in the Flesh, His sufferings and exaltation, and the redemption of the whole human race.

It is true that God's love and mercy were over all nations, yet it was with the Jewish Church that He thus closely dealt. Outside its pale, there was no sure revelation and no

<sup>1</sup> Acts vii. 38.

<sup>2</sup> Rom. ix. 4, 5.

special blessing. The Gentiles, i.e., all nations other than the Jews, are described by St. Paul as "aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise."<sup>1</sup> Our Blessed Lord Himself declared that "salvation is of the Jews;"<sup>2</sup> for the Jewish Church was the covenanted sphere of God's favour, and the home of His truth. Though promises to the nations outside the Jewish Church were given, they also depended upon the coming of the Deliverer, the Son of God made Man.

ii.

"When the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth His Son, made of a woman, made under the law."<sup>3</sup> His birth, His sufferings, His rejection, and His exaltation, had been foretold in the Old Testament Scriptures. He came under the Law, obeying all its precepts.

Jesus Christ did not come to destroy the old Church, and to build a new Church on its ruins; but rather He caused it to pass into a higher state of existence. He said,—“Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.”<sup>4</sup> He was born and lived on earth within the bounds of the Jewish Church, with its Scriptures, Laws, Sacrifices, and Rites; and in His own Person gave to them a fuller meaning, and a new power to save and to heal the souls of men. In His Person, and through His grace, the old types passed into new and living realities.

<sup>1</sup> Eph. ii. 12.

<sup>2</sup> St. John iv. 22.

<sup>3</sup> Gal. iv. 4.

<sup>4</sup> St. Matt. v. 17.

Thus the Christian Church grew out of the old religion, as the leaves and flowers of a plant grow out of the stem. The Christian Church was the offspring of that of the Jews. Our Lord Himself clearly taught this continuity between the two Churches by speaking of the Christian Church as "Israel."<sup>1</sup> There is but one Israel, or chosen people, from the beginning to the end:

God's purposed dealings with mankind through Christ, were too wonderful to be carried into effect without due warning. There was need of long and careful preparation for the Incarnation, and its application in the Christian Church. This preparation was made by God by means of the Jewish Church. Its great work was to prepare the way for Christ, and for God's fullest revelation of truth, and His richest outpourings of grace in Christ. "The law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ."<sup>2</sup>

The prophecies, types, and figures of the Old Testament find their fulfilment in Christ Himself, and the Christian Church.

The Revelation of the Old Testament is complete in that of the New Testament.

The old Sacrifices are fulfilled in the Sacrifice of the Lamb of God on Calvary, and its application in the Holy Eucharist.

The moral Law in the Ten Commandments is perfected, and raised to a higher meaning by Christ in the Sermon on the Mount, and made binding upon Christian people.

The Priesthood is summed up and perfected in Christ, the Great High Priest, and continued in the Christian Ministry.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xix. 28.

<sup>2</sup> Gal. iii. 24.

Holy Baptism takes the place of Circumcision, and the Holy Eucharist of the Pass-over.

The Jewish Sabbath passes into the Christian Sunday.

In short the old Church was absorbed in the new; and the Jewish religion, filled with new meaning and endowed with new powers, through the coming of God in the flesh and the out-pouring of the Holy Ghost at Pentecost, passed into THE CATHOLIC<sup>1</sup> RELIGION.

<sup>1</sup> For an explanation of the term "Catholic," the reader is referred to pages 208, 209.





## *Christ in the Church.*



"I saw seven golden candlesticks ; and in the midst one like unto the Son of Man, and He had in His right hand seven stars. . . . The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven candlesticks are the seven churches."—Rev. i. 12 to end.

(Illustration taken, by permission, from Grueber's "Pure Offering")

## CHAPTER II.

### THE FOUNDATION OF THE CHURCH.

**T**HERE is in our midst a vast society named the Church of God. If we are not already members of this Church, we are at least conscious of its presence.

What is the origin of the Christian Church; from whence did it come; who was its founder?

To this question there is but one answer,—“The Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of His people shall trust in it.”<sup>1</sup> Jesus Christ, the Son of God made Man, is the Founder of the Church.

This is clear from our Lord's words to St. Peter, who had just confessed Him to be the Son of God,—“upon this rock<sup>2</sup> I will build my

<sup>1</sup> Isaiah xiv. 32.

<sup>2</sup> The Church has received no certain or fixed tradition as to what our Lord precisely meant by “the rock” in this passage. Some of the Fathers teach that Christ Himself is the rock, others that the Faith in the Incarnation which St. Peter confessed is meant, others again that St. Peter is the rock. Several of the Fathers hold two of these opinions together, and some hold all three. But, as Dr. Pusey has pointed out in his note upon this passage in Tertullian, these expositions in no way exclude each other. The general sense of the various interpretations is the same, viz.: that the rock upon which our Lord built His Church was formed by the association with Himself of the Apostolic Ministry, of which St. Peter was the type and representative. What the Fathers did *not* hold, and never expressed, is that

church.”<sup>1</sup> Christ regards the Church as His own, and claims to be its founder. He is the architect who planned the Church, the builder who constructed it after His own design, the main foundation upon which the Church rests. “I will build my church.” It is worthy of note that this is our Lord’s first clear mention of the Church. It is drawn from His lips, as it were, by the first confession of the truth of the Incarnation. St. Peter was the first to confess belief in the Incarnate Lord; he had just owned “the Son of man” to be “the Son of the Living God.”<sup>2</sup> The promise of the Church is based upon this earliest confession of the Incarnation, and follows it as part of one and the same great design.

The Son of God came into the world to save man in a kingdom. This kingdom is His Church. It is the new creation of which He, the Incarnate Lord, is the Head. The Church is the kingdom of the Incarnation. “It is not by a book, but by His acts, His words, the means of grace He ordained, and the Spirit which He bestowed, that He chose to found the Church.”

The work which the Church is planned to fulfil towards mankind, is too great to rest upon any but upon God Himself. A Church founded by man, would be at best but a human society, liable to change and error, and liable to pass away. Such a Church would afford no security or safety to the soul. We could not rely upon it; we could not place any confidence

St. Peter was so constituted ‘rock’ as to exclude the other Apostles.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xvi. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 13-20.

in its offices towards us. Our hope of salvation in the Church rests upon the fact that the Church is the kingdom of our Incarnate Lord,—a Divine kingdom of which He is the Founder, and in which He has pledged Himself to save men. Against this Church “the gates of hell shall not prevail.”<sup>1</sup>

It has been asked,—“Are we joined to Christ by being joined to His Church, or are we joined to the Church by being joined to Christ?” This question can only be answered by saying,—“Whichever way it is, the result is the same, for the Church is one with Christ, and He is one with the Church.” “He is the Head” of which the Church is the Body.<sup>2</sup> As St. Augustine says,—“Whole Christ consisteth of Head and Body.”

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xvi. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Col. i. 18.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE MINISTRY OF THE CHURCH.

#### I. THE FOUNDATION OF THE MINISTRY.

AS we have already seen, when Jesus Christ came, the Jewish Church with its Divinely-appointed Ministry, existed in its full strength. God had taken one tribe out of the twelve to be the priestly tribe; and one family of that tribe to bear the highest office of the priesthood. His choice fell upon the tribe of Levi, and in it on the family of Aaron. Members of this tribe and family alone formed the Divinely-appointed ministers of the Jewish Church.

But this order, which typified the priesthood of our Lord, was not intended to continue when He came. It was the will of God that the Aaronic priesthood should pass away, and that a better and more enduring priesthood should take its place. The priesthood which was to supplant it was that which had been prefigured in the days of Abraham by the mysterious Melchisedec, of whom we read in the fourteenth chapter of Genesis.

#### i.

It is important that we should see wherein the difference between the priesthood of Aaron, and that of Melchisedec lay. In what way was

the latter superior to the former, that it should supplant it?

The priesthood of Aaron was hereditary, being handed down from father to son; it was but for a time and destined to pass away. The priesthood of Melchisedec was inherent in himself and independent of others; it was to endure unto the end of time. Moreover, there was a feature in the priesthood of Melchisedec, which was wanting in that of Aaron. Aaron was a priest simply: Melchisedec was a king as well as a priest. Melchisedec is described as "king of Salem, priest of the Most High God."<sup>1</sup>

ii.

The priesthood of Melchisedec was fulfilled in our Lord. In the Psalms, He is described as a "Priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec."<sup>2</sup> In the Epistle to the Hebrews, He is five times spoken of by the same title.<sup>3</sup>

When our Lord came, He took upon Himself for our salvation the threefold office of Prophet, Priest, and King. He was anointed by the Spirit in His Incarnation and at His Baptism to be,—

The Prophet, who should teach man about God.

The Priest, who should reconcile man to God.

The King, who should subdue man to God.

These three offices were summed up in His own Person: and were bestowed upon Him never to be taken from Him. Now, in heaven, at the Father's right hand, Jesus Christ is still the Prophet, the Priest, and the King of His Church.

<sup>1</sup> Heb. vii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. cx. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Heb. v. 6, 10; vi. 20; vii. 17, 21.

He no longer exercises these offices towards the Church on earth in visible presence, but through a Divinely-appointed Ministry. He has been pleased to choose and set apart a certain order of men, to represent Him in His Church below.

The first of this long series of representatives to whom He gave authority to act for Him, were the Twelve Apostles whom He chose out of the body of believers.<sup>1</sup> Our Lord gave them the title of "Apostles," i.e., those who are sent forth. The Twelve Apostles were men sent forth by Christ to be the prophets, or teachers, priests and rulers of His Church. To the Twelve our Lord said,—*"As my Father hath sent me, even so send I you."*<sup>2</sup> Jesus chose these men to be with Him, and in this way trained them to take His place when He should leave the earth.

In like manner, He instructed them to choose others to take their place, and to succeed to their office at their death. In this way provision was made for the continuation of the Ministry founded by our Lord, and for the perpetuation in the Church of His threefold Mission as Prophet, Priest, and King.

On the Eve of His Ascension into heaven, He bestowed mission or authority upon the Ministry He had chosen, saying,—*"All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with*

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke vi. 13, etc.

<sup>2</sup> St. John xx. 21.

you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.”<sup>1</sup>

To shew how truly He intended that they should be His representatives in the world, He declared,—“He that heareth you heareth me; and he that despiseth you despiseth me.”<sup>2</sup> It is impossible to find words which shall set forth more strongly the Divine origin and authority of the Christian Ministry.

### iii.

In the words “Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you,”<sup>3</sup> Jesus taught that the Christian Ministry is derived from above, and not from below. Of the Christian Ministry, as well as that of the Jewish Church, the words of God are true,—“I have given your priest’s office unto you.”<sup>4</sup>

The term “clergy” is now used in speaking of the Christian priesthood. This word signifies those upon whom the sacred lot has fallen,—those chosen by God to a sacred office. The clergy are not so much the organs of the people, as the ministers of Christ to His people. Thus it is their first duty to represent God to the people as His ambassadors. An ambassador is one who represents the king who sends him. The clergy can say,—“We are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us: we pray you in Christ’s stead, be ye reconciled to God.”<sup>5</sup>

It is most important to notice this. The members of parliament who govern our land, receive their authority from below,—from those

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 18–20.      <sup>2</sup> St. Luke x. 16.

<sup>3</sup> St. John xv. 16.      <sup>4</sup> Num. xviii. 7.      <sup>5</sup> 2 Cor. v. 20.



who choose them as their representatives: they represent the people. But the ministers of the Church receive their authority by commission from Jesus Christ, Whom they represent. They are the Messengers, Watchmen, and Stewards of the Lord. Thus the authority of the Priesthood of the Church of God is derived from above. The Clergy are sent by God to the people. Every minister of the true Church can say,—“Christ hast sent me to represent Him; I speak and act for Him; I am His minister; I am come to minister ‘in the person of Christ.’”<sup>1</sup>

It is important also to notice that when Christ sends men to be His representatives, He does not part with His power, He only puts it forth. When the deputies of the king administer law in distant lands, they do not dethrone the king, they maintain and exercise his authority. It is so with the Christian Ministry. Christ keeps the power in His own hands, putting it forth by means of His ministers. This truth gives the explanation of the old saying, “ubi sacerdos, ibi Christus,” i.e., “where the priest is, there is Christ.”

The very greatness of the claim of the clergy to act “in the person of Christ,” is their safeguard against pride. What room is there for self-exaltation in a system in which self is merged and lost in another, and in which the man fades, and the Lord is more and more? The priesthood must never lose sight of St. Paul’s teaching,—“We have this treasure in earthen vessels, that the excellency of the power may be of God, and not of us.”<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. iv. 1.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Cor. iv. 7.

## II. THE APOSTOLIC SUCCESSION.

The power to act as ministers of Christ was, as already said, given by Jesus Christ in the first instance to the Apostles. But this ministerial commission was not intended to be exercised only by them, and to cease when they died. The Christian Ministry was formed as the appointed means of applying the blessings of the Incarnation to mankind; and the Incarnation is not a passing event in the world's history, but an abiding reality. The permanent character of the Ministry which Christ ordained, rests upon the permanent character of His Incarnation.

Our Lord intended the office which He bestowed upon the twelve Apostles, to live on after their deaths, until the end of the world. The Apostolic Ministry is an abiding fact in a world of change.

It is true that the commission,—“Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you,”<sup>1</sup> was given to the Apostles, but it was accompanied by the promise,—“Lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.” This promise was not addressed to all Christian people, but only to the Apostles,<sup>2</sup> and that too in connection with the official acts of teaching and baptising. It is as though Christ had said,—“Baptise and teach all nations, and I will be with you in so doing.” Moreover, He promised to be with the Apostles in performing

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 16.

these ministerial acts "unto the end of the world." But how could He be with the Apostles in their work "unto the end of the world"? He knew that the Apostles would die like other men, and therefore the promise of being with them as individuals "unto the end of the world," could not be our Lord's meaning.

i.

"The end of the world" of which our Lord spake, has not yet come; how then is His promise to the Apostles fulfilled?

The only possible meaning of the saying "Lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world" is this,—“I will be with the Ministry of which you are but the first members, I will be with you, and not only with you, but also with all who shall come after you in the Ministry. You will die, but your office will live on, and I will be with that office in the persons of your successors, even unto the end of the world.”

Thus we have the great promise on which the doctrine of the Apostolic succession rests. As Christ was with the Apostles confirming and ratifying their official acts, so He has promised to be with their successors as long as His mediatorial Kingdom lasts. We have thus the best possible grounds for believing in the continuity of the Apostolic Ministry as it now exists among ourselves.

ii.

But how was this continuity, or succession to be secured?

It was to be secured by the Apostles in their life-time providing successors to their office. As our Blessed Lord ordained the Twelve to be His representatives when He left the earth, so the Apostles chose others to take their place when they in turn were withdrawn by death. This plan of continuing the Apostles' Ministry was to be carried on from age to age until the end of time. As a fact of history, it has been carried on. It is now nearly two thousand years since our Lord's promise was made. During this long period, successors of the Apostles, first receiving and then in turn handing on the Divine power and authority which Christ gave to the Twelve, have never been wanting. Such successors of the Apostles are with us now. The Apostolic succession is the link or bond which connects the Church of the nineteenth century with that of the first century.

In passing on the ministerial office to their immediate successors, the Apostles used the laying on of hands. This ceremony signifies the transfer of authority, and it gave its name to the rite of ordination. Ordination is the setting apart of men to be ministers of Christ. The Apostles laid their hands upon their successors, and these successors in turn did the same to others. There are several instances of this method of passing on the ministerial offices in the New Testament.<sup>1</sup> What was then done has been done ever since. Every bishop, priest, and deacon, is now set apart by the laying on of hands. By this means there has been no break in the transmission of the ministerial commission in the

<sup>1</sup> See Acts vi. 6. 1 Tim. iv. 14; v. 22. 2 Tim. i. 6.

Church of God, from the times of the Apostles down to our own day.

iii.

The greatest possible care has ever been taken in this matter, to secure the true succession. It became a rule of the Church in very early days, that at least three successors of the Apostles (or bishops as they were called), should lay their hands upon the heads of those whom they admitted to the highest office of the Ministry.

The figure of a chain, reaching link by link from the Apostles' days down to our own times, has been used in describing the Apostolic succession. But the figure of a net is more true to fact. The connection between the chief ministers of the Church and the Apostles, is not so much of the nature of a chain, as of a vast network. If by chance one strand of the net should fail, yet the whole would not be broken up. "It has been mathematically argued that, even if we make the absurd supposition of one consecrator in twenty at any particular moment in history having been, through some accident, himself not validly consecrated, the chances will be 8,000 to 1 against all three consecrators in any given case being in like position."

The reason for this extraordinary care is to guard against the loss of the Apostolic succession,—a loss which would result in the dying out of the Church as our Lord constituted it. A Church stands or falls by the Apostolic succession. We shall see in the next section that the Apostolic succession is

the pledge of a valid Ministry, and of valid Sacraments. The term "valid" implies the fulfilment of God's conditions whereby certainty is secured. That which is "valid" rests upon the security of the Divine covenant. Without a Ministry possessing Christ's authority, there can be no certainty that we possess valid Sacraments conveying the grace which they express; and if there is uncertainty about the Sacraments, there is uncertainty as to union with Christ. Without the Divinely-appointed Ministry of the Church, we have no guarantee that the flow of covenanted grace would continue. Should the Apostolic succession die out, there would be need of a second appointment directly by our Lord, and of a second day of Pentecost with a fresh outpouring of the Holy Spirit. We need not contemplate such a disaster, for our Lord's promise stands sure,—“Lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.”

## iv.

It has been already shewn that all the great features of the Christian Church are prefigured in the Old Testament. The Apostolic succession is an instance of this. The chief ministers of the Jewish Church were the high priest, and the priests. They are described as the “sons of Aaron,” for they were descended from him by *natural* descent, the priestly powers being handed down from father to son. The Apostolic succession is by *spiritual* descent, through the laying on of hands.

Aaron, the first high priest, was called directly by God to the office; the Apostles were called by Christ Himself. It was the will of God that

the office of high priest should continue after Aaron's death. At the close of his life, we read that God said "Aaron shall be gathered unto his people. . . . Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up unto Mount Hor: and strip Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son. . . . And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son."<sup>1</sup>

This custom was continued in after years, as we learn from Exod. xxix. 29, 30,—“And the holy garments of Aaron shall be his son's after him, to be anointed therein, and to be consecrated in them. And that son that is priest in his stead shall put them on seven days, when he cometh into the tabernacle of the congregation to minister in the holy place.” The newly-made high priest was to wear the vestments of his predecessor to show the continuity of the office, and to mark its complete identity with that of his predecessor. We have in all this a great foreshadowing of the Apostolic succession in the Christian Church.

Christ is gone up ; yet ere He passed  
From earth, in heav'n to reign,  
He formed one holy Church to last  
Till He should come again.

His Twelve Apostles first He made  
His ministers of grace ;  
And they their hands on others laid,  
To fill in turn their place.

So age by age, and year by year,  
His grace was handed on ;  
And still the holy Church is here,  
Although her Lord is gone.

J: M. NEALE.

<sup>1</sup> Num. xx. 24, etc.



### III. APOSTLES AND BISHOPS.

Our Blessed Lord is the fountain-head of the Christian Ministry. In His sacred Person, He summed up all the offices of the Ministry. Thus, in the New Testament He is named,—

1. APOSTLE.<sup>1</sup>
2. BISHOP.<sup>2</sup>
3. PRIEST.<sup>3</sup>
4. DEACON, or Servant, as the name means.<sup>4</sup>

Our Queen sums up in herself all the lower offices of the State. The greater includes the lesser. This is true of the Apostolate, or Apostolic office. In a secondary sense the Apostles were founders of the Ministry. St. Paul declares that the Church is “built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets.”<sup>5</sup> All ministerial authority was lodged in them, and in their hands all official power was centred. The lower orders or grades of the Christian Ministry, which were to be developed as occasion arose, lay dormant in them.

#### i.

The first of these orders to be called out by the Apostles was the lowest order, that of the “deacons.” This was followed by the creation of a second order, named in the New Testament, “elders” or “bishops.” But though members of this second order were at first sometimes called “bishops,” they were not bishops in the special sense in which the term afterwards came to be used. The word

<sup>1</sup> Heb. iii. 1.      <sup>2</sup> 1 St. Pet. ii. 25.      <sup>3</sup> Heb. v. 6.

<sup>4</sup> St. Luke xxii. 27.      <sup>5</sup> Eph. ii. 20.

“bishop” means “overseer.” These so-named bishops were members of the second order who had the oversight of congregations. Thus, in the days of the Apostles, there were three orders in existence, viz. :—

1. APOSTLES, sent by Christ.
  2. ELDERS or BISHOPS,
  3. DEACONS,
- } sent by the Apostles.

But when the time drew near for the Apostles to depart this life, they selected members of the second order to succeed them in the government of the Church, and the ordaining of her ministers. Such were St. Timothy and St. Titus, who were raised by the Apostle St. Paul from the second to the first order, and became heads of the Church at Ephesus and Crete respectively. Gradually the name of “bishop” ceased to be applied to the second order, and became restricted to the first order.

Upon the death of the Apostles, these bishops took their place, and became chief ministers of the Church, possessing Apostolic authority within particular spheres, to ordain, and to bear rule over the presbyters or elders and the deacons.

## ii.

The Apostolate contained the germ of the Christian Ministry. At first the Episcopate, or order of bishops, slept in the Apostolate. During the closing years of the first century, the Apostolate was merged in the Episcopate. The order of Apostles passed away, and that of bishops took its place as a permanent institution in the Church. The one order grew out of the other as a branch of the Apostolic stem.

In a special sense the bishops became successors of the Apostles, inheriting the fulness of ministerial power. The three permanent orders were now,—

1. BISHOPS.
2. ELDERS,<sup>1</sup> or PRIESTS.
3. DEACONS.

Whatever confusion appears to exist as to the names given to the various grades of the Christian Ministry in the New Testament, it is quite clear that from the Apostles of Jesus Christ sprang the threefold order known henceforth by the titles of ‘bishops,’ ‘priests,’ and ‘deacons.’

This threefold order dates from New Testament times, and has been continued through the Apostolic succession to our own days without break. Thus, in the Preface to the services for ordaining the clergy of the Church in the Prayer Book we are taught,—“It is evident unto all men diligently reading the holy Scripture and ancient Authors, that from the Apostles’ time there have been these orders of Ministers in Christ’s Church ; Bishops, Priests, and Deacons. Which offices were evermore had in such reverend Estimation, that no man might presume to execute any of them, except he were first called, tried, examined, and known to have such qualities as are requisite for the same ; and also by publick Prayer, with Imposition of Hands, were approved and admitted thereunto by lawful Authority.”

<sup>1</sup> The original word for “elder” in the New Testament is always “presbyter,” which was afterwards shortened to “prester,” and then to “priest.”

## iii.

The subject of which we are treating is of such great importance, that it is well to quote the carefully weighed words of the late Dr. Liddon. In the course of a sermon preached at the consecration of two bishops<sup>1</sup> in St. Paul's Cathedral on St. Mark's Day, 1885, this great preacher said;—"When we say that Bishops are successors of the Apostles we are not formulating a theory, but stating a fact of history. In one sense, indeed, every presbyter succeeds the Apostles; like them, he ministers the Word and Sacraments of Christ. In another the Apostles have no successors; they alone were privileged to found the Church of Christ, and while founding it to wield a world-wide jurisdiction. . . . If Bishops do not singly share in the world-wide jurisdiction which belonged to the Apostles, and which could only now be wielded by the universal Episcopate acting together, they do in other respects reproduce from age to age among men the fulness of the Apostolic authority.

"There are . . . two, and only two . . . theories of the origin and character of the Christian ministry. Of these one makes the minister the elected delegate of the congregation; in teaching and ministering he exerts an authority which he derives from his flock. The other traces ministerial authority to the Person of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who deposited it in its fulness in the College of the Apostles. 'All power is given unto Me in heaven and in earth ;

<sup>1</sup> Bishop King of Lincoln, and Bishop Bickersteth of Exeter, were consecrated by the Archbishop of Canterbury, eight bishops assisting at the laying on of hands. This is an illustration of the practice named on page 22.

go ye therefore and make disciples of all nations.' 'As My Father hath sent Me, even so send I you.' The Apostles, thus invested with the plenitude of ministerial power, detached from themselves in the form of distinct grades or orders of ministry, so much as was needed, at successive epochs, for building up and supporting the Church. First, they created an order specially charged with the care of the poor and with the administration of Church funds, although also, empowered to preach, and to administer the sacrament of baptism. Next they bestowed on the Church a larger separate instalment of ministerial power—that of the presbyters or bishops—as in those first days the second order was called indifferently. To this order all ministerial capacity was committed, with the exception of that of transmitting the ministry. Lastly, St. Clement of Rome tells us, that desiring to avoid controversy which they foresaw, the Apostles ordained certain men to the end that, when they should have fallen asleep in death, others of approved character might succeed to their special office. Such were Timothy and Titus; not yet exclusively called Bishops, but certainly Bishops in the sense of the sub-Apostolic and of our own age; men who in addition to the fulness of ministerial capacity had also the power of transmitting it. In Crete, Titus receives explicit authority from St. Paul to ordain presbyters; at Ephesus, Timothy has particular directions from St. Paul respecting the way in which charges against presbyters are to be received. Thus we see in Timothy and Titus the exercise of what is distinctive both in Episcopal orders and Episcopal jurisdiction; and unless the pastoral epistles

are not of Apostolic origin, the three orders existed in their completeness under the eyes of St. Paul. Within the compass of the New Testament there are two facts which point to the establishment of the Episcopate in Apostolic times. One is the position of St. James-the-Less at Jerusalem; he seems to have been an Apostle who already occupied the more localized and restricted position of a Bishop. This appears in the place assigned to him at the Council of Jerusalem, and in the formal visit which St. Paul paid him at a later period, but especially in the unanimous testimony of the second century, which spoke of him as Bishop of Jerusalem. The other fact is the representation in the Apocalypse of the 'angels' of the Seven Churches. What were these angels? Guardian spirits of the Churches they cannot have been, since some of them were guilty of grave faults. Nor can they have been the Churches themselves, since St. John distinguishes the angels and the Churches as having the distinct symbols of stars and candlesticks. Each angel represents a Church, for the faith and practice of which he is responsible; and it would be difficult to express more exactly the position of a primitive Bishop."<sup>1</sup>

#### IV. THE EPISCOPATE, OF DIVINE ORIGIN.

Is the Episcopate, or order of Bishops, essential to the Church's life, or not? Are bishops merely *useful* to the well-being of the Church, or are they *necessary* to its very existence?

<sup>1</sup> *A Father in Christ.* p. 8. etc.

To these important questions there is but one answer, and it is this;—"The Episcopate is of Divine institution in the Church, and therefore a necessity." The old saying "No Church without a bishop," not only expresses a fact of history, but a great truth also. There never has been a church without a bishop, and there never can be.

To quote the words of Sanderson, the learned Bishop of Lincoln (A.D. 1660):—"My opinion is that Episcopal government is not derived merely from Apostolical practice or institution, but that it is originally founded in the Person and office of the Messiah, our blessed Lord Jesus Christ, Who, being sent by His Heavenly Father to be the great Apostle,<sup>1</sup> Shepherd, and Bishop<sup>2</sup> of His Church, and anointed to that office immediately after His baptism by John, with Power and the Holy Ghost<sup>3</sup> descending then upon Him in a bodily shape,<sup>4</sup> did afterwards before His Ascension into heaven, send and empower His holy Apostles, giving them the Holy Ghost likewise, as His Father had given Him, in like manner as His Father had before sent Him<sup>5</sup> to execute the same Apostolical, Episcopal, and Pastoral office, for the ordering and governing of His Church, until His coming again; and so the same office to continue in them and their successors unto the end of the world."<sup>6 7</sup>

This teaching is in accord with the testimony of the whole Church from the first, which sets forth the order of bishops as a Divine institution, permanent and necessary.

<sup>1</sup> Heb. iii. 1.    <sup>2</sup> 1 Pet. ii. 25.    <sup>3</sup> Acts x. 37, 38.

<sup>4</sup> St. Luke iii. 22.    <sup>5</sup> St. John xx. 21.    <sup>6</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 18-20.

<sup>7</sup> Works, vol. v. p. 191, ed. Jacobson.

The Episcopate was instituted for four great ends, viz., to be:—

- i. THE FOUNT OF THE MINISTRY.
- ii. THE BOND OF UNITY.
- iii. THE GUARDIAN OF THE TRUTH.
- iv. THE INSTRUMENT AND PLEDGE OF GRACE.

i. THE EPISCOPATE, THE FOUNT OF THE MINISTRY.

The bishops, as successors of the Apostles, sum up all the offices of the Christian Ministry. In the Episcopate lies the germ of the three orders of the Ministry;—bishops, priests, and deacons. A bishop can do all that a priest or a deacon can do. Thus, the whole work of the Christian Ministry might, if need be, be performed by the one order of bishops only. But the bishops give out, or delegate, certain of their powers to others, who are named priests and deacons. This giving out of power is termed ordination. The priesthood exercises a considerable portion of the Episcopal office, but only a portion; the diaconate, or order of deacons, exercises a still smaller portion. Priests and deacons in acting for the bishop, act for Christ; Whom the bishop represents.

In ordination the bishop separates certain of the laity to become clergy, and bestows upon them authority to minister as his representatives. The bishops, and the bishops only, have power to perpetuate the Ministry in its various grades. They do this by handing on the authority received from Christ through the



Apostolic succession. It is on this ground that the Church holds that no one can act as a minister of Christ, either lawfully or validly, without ordination by a bishop.

As Hooker says,—“Whereas presbyters” (i.e., priests) “by such power as they have received for administration of the Sacraments, are able only to beget children unto God; bishops, having power to ordain, do by virtue thereof create fathers to the people of God.”

## ii. THE EPISCOPATE, THE BOND OF UNITY.

The Episcopate, or order of bishops, exists as a safeguard from schism or division. Those who separate themselves from their lawful bishops become schismatics. To separate from the bishops, is to separate from the Church of which the bishops are the rulers. Loyalty to the rulers of the State is the bond of union in the nation; when this loyalty is withheld, disunion or revolution is the result. To separate from the bishops is an act of disloyalty to Jesus Christ, whose representatives they are.

The idea of the Episcopate as a bond of unity is strongly insisted upon by early writers. For example, St. Ignatius (A.D. 110) the great and glorious martyr, bishop of Antioch, and a disciple of the Apostle St. John, writes,—“Where the bishop appears, there let the people be, as where is Jesus Christ, there is the Catholic Church.” “The bishop is the centre of each individual Church, as Jesus Christ is the centre of the universal Church.” “He who does anything apart from the bishop, and

presbytery, and deacons is not pure in his conscience." "For as many as are of God and of Jesus Christ, they are with the bishop." St. Ignatius is but enlarging upon the teaching of the New Testament, where the continuing in "the Apostles' doctrine and fellowship," is named as a mark of Church unity.<sup>1</sup>

In the writings of Tertullian (A.D. 200), we learn that certain bodies claiming to belong to the Church were thus challenged,—“Let them produce the account of the origins of their churches; let them unroll the line of their bishops, running down in such a way from the beginning that their first bishop shall have had for his authorizer and predecessor one of the Apostles, or of the apostolic men who continued to the end in their fellowship.”

St. Cyprian, bishop of Carthage and martyr (A.D. 200), sets forth the unity of the Episcopate as the pledge of the unity of the Church. Of his teaching we shall read in a later chapter of this book.

Thus we see that in very early times, the order of bishops was regarded as the bond of unity in the Church.

### iii. THE EPISCOPATE, THE GUARDIAN OF THE TRUTH.

As the guardian of the true faith, the Episcopate is the guarantee against heresy or false doctrine. The true faith was revealed by Christ and His Holy Spirit to the Apostles in all its completeness. The Apostles handed down this body of teaching to their successors,

<sup>1</sup> Acts ii. 42.

the bishops. By this means the true faith was to be preserved in the world. St. Paul alludes to this mode of handing down the truth in his words to Timothy, the first bishop of Ephesus. He writes,—“Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me, in faith and love which is in Christ Jesus. That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us.”<sup>1</sup> “The things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also.”<sup>2</sup> St. Paul is speaking of the deposit of Christian truth, which was entrusted to Timothy, as a bishop, to uphold and to guard:

St. Irenæus (A.D. 200), in speaking of the succession of bishops in the local Church of Rome, says,—“The blessed Apostles” (St. Peter and St. Paul), “then having founded and built up this Church, committed the ministry of the Episcopate to Linus. Of this Linus, Paul makes mention in the Epistle to Timothy. Anacletus succeeds him. After him, in the third place from the Apostles, Clement obtained the Episcopate, who had both seen the blessed Apostles, and been with them, and still had the preaching of the Apostles ringing in his ears, and their tradition before his eyes.”<sup>3</sup> St. Irenæus in speaking of Polycarp goes on to say,—“And Polycarp too, not only having been instructed by the Apostles, and having lived continually with many who had seen Christ, and having also been appointed by Apostles bishop

<sup>1</sup> 2 Tim. i. 13, 14.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ii. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Quoted by Dr. Pusey in the note at the end of his famous sermon, *The Rule of Faith*, p. 65.

in Asia, in the Church at Smyrna . . . . uniformly taught these things, which he had also learned from the Apostles, which also the Church hands down, which also alone are true."<sup>1</sup>

One of the chief duties of the Episcopate is to hand on the Christian faith whole and undefiled, as it came down from the Apostles of Jesus Christ. To aid the bishops along the ages in this great task, our Lord promised the guidance of the Holy Ghost, the Spirit of truth. His words are,—“I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, that He may abide with you for ever; even the Spirit of truth.”<sup>2</sup>

This great promise is similar in its terms to that in which our Lord pledged Himself to be with the Apostles “always, even unto the end of the world.”<sup>3</sup> In each case the promise of a Divine Presence was made in the first instance to the Apostles, but made in such terms as to include their successors, the bishops, throughout all time. Our Lord will be with the Apostles “ALWAY;” the Spirit of truth will abide with them “FOR EVER.” But as the Apostles soon after died, it is clear that the promises here made were not to the Apostles only as individuals, but as representatives of the Christian Ministry, of which they were the first members. In no other way could the twofold Presence of Christ and His Spirit be vouchsafed “always,” and “for ever,” but to the successors of the Apostles, the bishops of the Church.

It is also to be observed that the idea of

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by Dr. Pusey, *The Rule of Faith*, p. 66.

<sup>2</sup> St. John xiv. 16, 17.

<sup>3</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 20.

*teaching* is specially connected with both these passages. Our Lord's presence is guaranteed to the Apostles and the bishops in "teaching" the nations "to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you:"<sup>1</sup> the Holy Spirit will be with them "for ever" as "the Spirit of truth."<sup>2</sup> The same Blessed Spirit Who revealed the truth to the Apostles, enabled their successors to witness to that truth.

When false doctrine, or heresy as it is called, sprang up, it was exposed and rejected by the bishops acting alone, or in Council. The Councils were great assemblies of bishops of the Church. In these Councils, the bishops declared the true faith as it had been handed down to them from the Apostles. They restated the old faith from the beginning, as they had received it.

As an example of this, we may instance the heresy of Arius, who denied the Godhead of our Saviour. Three hundred and eighteen bishops met in Council at Nicæa in the year 325, and condemned the heresy, by declaring the truth which they had received through their predecessors from the Apostles. "So have we received" was the witness they bore. We have their statement of Faith in the Nicene Creed, which attests, with all possible fulness, the Divine Nature of our Lord Jesus Christ. This decision was received by the whole Church, and thus we are certain that it has the authority of the Holy Ghost, the Spirit of truth.

As other heresies arose, they were met and condemned in like manner; the bishops speaking out, and the Church at large confirming their decisions.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 20.

<sup>2</sup> St. John xiv. 16, 17.

#### iv. THE EPISCOPATE, THE INSTRUMENT AND PLEDGE OF GRACE.

The streams of grace flow in the Church through the Sacraments, which are called "the channels of grace." Our Lord committed the Sacraments to the keeping of the Apostles and their successors, the bishops and clergy of the Church. St. Paul speaks of the clergy as "stewards of the mysteries of God."<sup>1</sup> These "mysteries" are certain deep truths, which pass the understanding, such as "the mystery of the Holy Incarnation;" but chiefly and above all, "the mysteries of God" mean the Sacraments, called in all parts of the Church by the name of "the holy mysteries." Of these Sacraments the bishops and clergy are the stewards,—the guardians and dispensers.

The Sacraments can be duly celebrated only by those who have been authorised by Christ, that is, by the Apostles and their successors. This is true not so much as a matter of mere order, but as resting on our Lord's revealed will. Unless the Sacraments are ministered by properly qualified persons, there is no security that they convey grace. Thus it comes about that the bishops, and those sent by them, secure the channels of grace; in other words, the means of grace depend upon a lawful Ministry.

The power and authority to minister the Sacraments was given by Christ in the first instance to the Apostles, to be handed on by them to the bishops who succeeded them. In the words,—*"Go ye therefore, and teach all*

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. iv. 1.

nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,"<sup>1</sup> Christ instituted the Sacrament of Holy Baptism.

In the words,—“Take eat : this is my body, which is broken for you : this do in remembrance of me.” . . . “This cup is the new testament in my blood : this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me,”<sup>2</sup> He ordained the Sacrament of His Body and Blood.

In the words,—“Receive ye the Holy Ghost : whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them,”<sup>3</sup> He instituted the Sacrament of Absolution.

To say, “I baptise thee,” or “This is my body,” and “This is my blood,” or “I absolve thee,” would be presumptuous, unless the person who used these solemn words was duly authorised by God to use them. There is, moreover, no guarantee that such words would effect what they mean, unless used by competent persons, that is to say by the bishops and those sent by them.<sup>4</sup>

Thus we see that the Episcopate is the warrant or guarantee of Sacramental grace. Those bodies of Christians who have lost the Apostolic succession, have lost with it the Divine warrant of such grace. God may

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 19.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cor. xi. 24, 25.

<sup>3</sup> St. John xx. 22, 23.

<sup>4</sup> The Church recognises as valid, though irregular, baptism administered, in case of necessity, by any lay person with water, and in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Rather than anyone should die unbaptised, it is the duty of any person present to baptise, if a minister of the Church cannot be had.

excuse those who act in ignorance, and He may reward their faith by some gift of grace; but if so, it is as outside the covenant, and such grace is "uncovenanted grace," and there is an element of uncertainty about it.

To sum up what has been said in this chapter, we may add, that to be united to the Body of Christ, which is the Church,—to know the Truth,—to be assured that we are in the sphere of grace,—it is needful to place ourselves under the rule, guidance, and ministry, of the bishops of the Church of God.



## CHAPTER IV.

### GRADES AMONGST THE BISHOPS OF THE CHURCH.

THE Christian Ministry, consisting of the three orders of bishops, priests, and deacons, has already been shewn to be of Divine institution. It cannot therefore be changed to any other form of ministry, and it will continue to be *the ministry* of the Church until the end of the world.

But as the Church grew and spread in the world, it was found convenient to make distinctions of rank in each of the three orders of the Ministry. This was specially the case with the bishops, the chief ministers of the Church.

#### i.

In early times bishops were much more numerous than they are now. Every city had its bishop, and at first all bishops were equal. But as time went on, it came about quite naturally that the greater the city, the greater was the dignity of its bishop; the rank or civil importance of the city passing on to its bishop. And it followed quite naturally too, that the bishops of smaller towns in surrounding districts or provinces, placed themselves under the protection and guidance of those of the

greater cities. This is the origin of what is known as "the provincial system," which was not long in becoming universal, covering the whole ground of the Church.

This plan of grouping the Churches of a province under the bishop of its chief town, came about as a matter of church order or organisation; it was no part of the Divine institution of the Ministry, or of the Divine constitution of the Church. The bishops at the head of provinces were styled metropolitans, a name derived from the word "metropolis," the mother-city or capital.

The Rev. F. W. Puller, in treating of the rise of metropolitans writes,—“As a rule, Christianity would get a footing first in the metropolis of each region. The other lesser cities would be evangelised by missions sent forth from thence; and so the suffragan sees would look on themselves as daughters of the metropolitanical see. The metropolitan bishop was the natural centre of unity for the bishops of the province. When a see became vacant, it would be the metropolitan who would call together his brother bishops to consult about the appointment of a worthy pastor to succeed to the empty throne; and the metropolitan would naturally preside at the preliminary meetings for consultation and election, as well as at the consecration service itself. If troubles arose among the bishops, whether heresies or schisms or quarrels or other wrong-doings, or if new and difficult questions emerged, concerning which it seemed desirable that the neighbouring bishops should act together, it would be natural for the bishops to meet in synod, and it would also be natural that the metropolitan should take the

initiative and summon his brethren; and the metropolis would normally be the obvious place of meeting. Under such circumstances the metropolitan would of course preside, and in most cases he would be entrusted by the synod with the duty of seeing that its decisions were carried out. Thus by the natural course of events, and by the free action of the essentially co-equal prelates, a certain precedence and pre-eminence, and, more than that, a certain right of initiative and of inspection and of administration, would by common consent be lodged in the occupant of the metropolitical see." <sup>1</sup>

ii.

In time "the provincial system" developed in some parts of the Church, but never universally, into what is known as "the patriarchal system." The provinces of which we have spoken varied considerably in size. The first bishop of a large province would naturally be regarded as a more important person than the first bishop of a small province. Moreover the bishop whose seat happened to be in a city of great importance, would possess a corresponding influence. In certain regions particular groups of provinces became subject to the bishops of the greater cities. Amongst the great cities of the world in the early days of Christianity were, Rome, Alexandria and Antioch. These cities owed a further prominence in the eyes of Christians to their connection with great names in the Church. Thus both St. Peter and St. Paul had spent some time in Antioch. Rome re-

<sup>1</sup> *The Primitive Saints and the See of Rome*, pp. 11, 12.

ceived the Apostolic succession from St. Peter and St. Paul,<sup>1</sup> and both of these Apostles were martyred and buried there; the Church of Alexandria was founded by St. Mark the Evangelist. To this list must be added Jerusalem, the Mother-Church of Christendom, which owned St. James, a relative of our Lord, as its first bishop. Later on Constantinople, as it rose into fame as the Emperor's seat, and as the second city in the world, was added to the list. The bishops of these cities were regarded as men of rank in the Church, and upon them, in time, was bestowed the title of "patriarchs." This word signifies "the heads of families." The groups of provinces under the care of these patriarchs were named "patriarchates." The patriarchs presided over the metropolitans, who in turn presided over the bishops of provinces. In the West, during the middle ages, the chief Archbishops who presided over National Churches, were called primates. The patriarchates were five in number; four being situated in the East, and one in the West. The patriarchates in the East were Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem. That in the West was Rome.<sup>2</sup> The patriarchates took

<sup>1</sup> St. Irenæus in speaking of the local Roman Church writes:—"The blessed Apostles (St. Peter and St. Paul) having founded and built up the Church (of Rome) committed the Episcopate to Linus." Iren. iii. 3.

<sup>2</sup> The claim of Rome to be the patriarch of the whole West rested on State legislation, and from a Church point of view was unauthorised. Even North Italy under Milan maintained its independence for a long time. North Africa can hardly be said to have ever yielded to the Roman patriarchate. Gaul did not submit until forced to do so by the Emperors. The ancient British Church was independent of any patriarch. Originally the Roman jurisdiction was limited

their names from the cities in which the patriarchs resided. The patriarchs were regarded as the five presidents of the Church. Amongst the patriarchs, the custom of the Church allowed grades in rank of honour. The first place was naturally given to Rome, because Rome was the capital of the empire, and also from its connection with the greatest of the Apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul. If religious considerations *alone* had determined the order of precedence, Jerusalem must have ranked first. Next to Rome, in rank of honour, came Constantinople as being the seat of the Roman Emperor and his court, and hence called "New Rome." In the general Council of Chalcedon held in 451 it was enacted that "as the fathers fitly bestowed precedence upon the throne of Old Rome because it was the Imperial City, and the 150 bishops most beloved of God"—i.e. the fathers of the second general Council in 381,—"moved by the same consideration, awarded equal precedence to the most holy throne of New Rome" i.e. Constantinople, "judging reasonably that the city honoured by the seat of the Empire, and by the Senate, should enjoy equal rank with the old Imperial Rome, and like her be magnified in ecclesiastical matters having the second place after her."

iii.

To sum up what has been said, we again quote the words of the Rev. F. W. Puller,—  
"By Divine right all bishops were inherently to the seven provinces of Central and Southern Italy, and to the three islands of Corsica, Sardinia, and Sicily. The subject is fully treated in Puller's *Primitive Saints*.

## 46 *Grades amongst the Bishops of the Church.*

equal, but by custom and ecclesiastical legislation the bishops of the metropolitical sees acquired certain rights which were delegated to them by their brother bishops. Moreover, among the most important Churches a certain order of precedence grew up, which corresponded with the civil dignity of the cities in which those Churches existed; and, finally, the Churches which were founded by the Apostles were treated with peculiar reverence."<sup>1</sup> We must be careful to note that whilst the distinction between bishops, priests, and deacons, is a matter of Divine appointment, these grades amongst bishops are not so. They were made for the sake of convenience in the better government of the Church. The distinctions are distinctions of honour, and of influence, and of strictly limited jurisdiction, and are useful as a matter of Church order; they are not essential to the Church's life. St. Cyprian teaches this, when he speaks of our Lord "giving to all the Apostles an equal power," and of their being "endued with an equal fellowship both of honour and power."<sup>2</sup> St. Jerome, writing A.D. 393, says likewise,— "wherever there is a bishop, whether it be at Rome, or Eugubium, whether it be at Constantinople, or at Rhegium, whether it be at Alexandria, or at Zoan, his dignity is one, and his priesthood is one . . . all alike are successors of the Apostles."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Primitive Saints*, p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> *The Unity of the Church*, Oxford translation. "*Library of the Fathers*," 1876. p. 134.

<sup>3</sup> *Letter cxlvi.* To Evangelus.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE ENDS FOR WHICH THE CHURCH EXISTS.

**F**ROM what has been already said in this work, it may be gathered that the Church of God is a Divine society existing in the world for great ends. At the risk of some slight repetition, it will be useful to dwell briefly upon the chief purposes for which the Church exists in our midst.

Our Blessed Lord, by His Incarnation, brought the fulness of grace and truth to the earth. "The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us . . . full of grace and truth." "Grace and truth came by Jesus Christ."<sup>1</sup> He wills to bestow His grace and to make known His truth in and through His Church. In Holy Scripture, the Church is described as "the bride,"<sup>2</sup> or spouse of Christ. It has been said that the spouse of Christ has two breasts, the breasts of grace and truth, by which she nourishes her members. Thus we are to regard the Church as,—

- I. THE SPHERE OF GRACE.
- II. THE HOME OF THE TRUTH.  
and hence as,—
- III. THE ARK OF SAFETY.

<sup>1</sup> St. John i. 14, 17.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. xxi. 9.

## I. THE CHURCH, THE SPHERE OF GRACE.

Man is a creature gifted with intelligence, affection, and will. By a right use of these endowments, he is by *nature* able to know, to love, and to serve God, but not perfectly. That he may be able to do these things perfectly, God adds to man's natural endowments, a supernatural gift, that is to say, a gift above nature. This supernatural gift is termed *grace*. By grace, man is lifted out of the natural order, and placed in a higher condition. This higher condition is known as a "state of grace." In a state of grace man is able to know, to love, and to serve God perfectly.

God has organized His Church as the sphere in which man may, in this life, be received into a state of grace. It is in the Church that Christ lifts us out of the order of nature, and places us in the state of grace, and thus fits us for the life of glory in heaven. The Church of God on earth is the highway of grace; the sure and trustworthy road along which we may pass to glory. It is in the Church, and through the Church, that our Lord Jesus Christ still carries on His work of saving men by uniting them to Himself. The Church is the scene of His promised action upon souls, a sort of Palestine or Holy Land in which He is still pleased to work. Within the Church, we are within the circle of covenanted grace. Outside the Church there is neither warrant nor certainty of grace.

In the words "I am the Vine, ye are the branches,"<sup>1</sup> our Lord teaches a great truth. As the sap flows from the vine through the

<sup>1</sup> St. John xv. 5.



branches to the foliage and fruit, so His grace flows through the Church to her members. It is the office of the Church, through the agency of the Holy Spirit, to put men in union with, and to keep them in union with, Jesus Christ the Author of grace.

## II. THE CHURCH, THE HOME OF THE TRUTH.

The Church is a Divine society to which are entrusted the treasures of grace and truth for the benefit of mankind. We have seen that in the ages before God became Man, He was gradually disclosing His truth to mankind as they were able to bear it. This disclosing is commonly called "revelation." God's revelation was complete in Jesus Christ. He, as God-made-Man, was "full of truth." Jesus said,—*"I am the Truth."*<sup>1</sup> He came to bring the truth in all its fulness to mankind.

The sum of truth was communicated by Christ through the Holy Spirit to the Church, in the person of her first leaders. To the Apostles our Lord said,—*"But the Comforter which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father shall send in my name, He shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance whatsoever I have said unto you ;"* and again,—*"When He, the Spirit of truth is come, He will guide you into all truth."*<sup>2</sup> In this manner the early Church became possessed of all the truth. St. Jude tells us that the faith *"was once delivered unto the saints."*<sup>3</sup> The word "once," means literally "once for all," or

<sup>1</sup> St. John i. 14 ; xiv. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. xiv. 26 ; xvi. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Verse 3.

"once only." The Church might be called upon to explain and enlarge upon the faith thus given, but she could never add to it. This faith or truth was "delivered to the saints," i.e. to the Church as its Divinely-appointed guardian. The truth of God was too precious a treasure to be left to take its chance in the world. It needed a home in which it might be preserved free from human error. It needed a guardian who should keep it, and hand it down, unimpaired to future ages. Such a home and such a guardian is "the Church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth."<sup>1</sup>

It is the office of the Church to explain aright Christ's teaching. This duty she is enabled to fulfil through the aid of the Holy Ghost, who abides with the Church. Man needs a trustworthy teacher of the doctrine of Christ; such a teacher is the Church of God. She is a teacher holding a Divine warrant, and her warrant rests upon the words of her Lord,—“Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them . . . teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you; and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.”<sup>2</sup> The Church is the heaven-born teacher of the truth.

### III. THE CHURCH, THE ARK OF SAFETY.

The Church being by God's appointment the sphere of grace, and the home of the truth, it follows that there can be "no safety outside the Church." In believing this, we are not called upon to give judgment as to the final

<sup>1</sup> 1 Tim. iii. 15.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.

state of those who remain and die outside the Church on earth. "Them that are without God judgeth."<sup>1</sup> Whilst rightly anxious about their salvation, we must leave them to the mercy of Him who alone knows whether they have heard, and rejected His call to enter the true fold. We may hope that those who had not the chance of joining the Church on earth, or who have never realised her claims, may, if they have been true to conscience, be received into the Church in paradise, in the time of waiting between death and judgment.<sup>2</sup>

"All knowledge of religion is from (God), and not only that which the Bible has transmitted to us. There never was a time when God had not spoken to man, and told him to a

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. v. 13.

<sup>2</sup> "They are members of the *soul* of the Church, who, not being members of the visible Communion and society, know not, that in not becoming members of it, they are rejecting the command of Christ, to Whom by faith and love and in obedience they cleave. And they, being members of the *body* or visible Communion of the Church, are not members of the *soul* of the Church, who, amid outward profession of the faith, do, in heart or deeds, deny Him whom in words they confess. The deliverance promised in that Day, is to those who, being in the body of the Church, shall by true faith in Christ and fervent love to Him belong to the soul of the Church also, or who, although not in the body of the Church shall not, through their own fault, have ceased to be in the body, and shall belong to its soul, in that through faith and love they cleave to Christ its Head."—Dr. Pusey, *The Minor Prophets*, on Joel ii. 32. In this passage Dr. Pusey is contrasting the condition of pious dissenters and others, with that of unworthy members of the Church, and considers that the former are more safe than the latter. He holds that dissenters of good life, though not members of the *body* of the Church, are nevertheless members of the *soul* of the Church; whilst Churchpeople of bad life, though members of the *body*, are not of the *soul* of the Church, and hence that the former are more acceptable to God than the latter.

certain extent his duty. . . . We are expressly told in the New Testament, that at no time He left Himself without witness in the world, and that in every nation He accepts those who fear and obey Him. It would seem, then, that there is something true and divinely revealed, in every religion all over the earth, overloaded, as it may be, and at times even stifled by the impieties which the corrupt will and understanding of man have incorporated with it. Such are the doctrines of the power and presence of an invisible God, of His moral law and governance, of the obligation of duty, and the certainty of a just judgment, and of reward and punishment, as eventually dispensed to individuals; so that Revelation, properly speaking, is an universal, not a local gift; and the distinction between the state of Israelites formerly and Christians now, and that of the heathen, is, not that we can, and they cannot attain to future blessedness, but that the Church of God ever has had, and the rest of mankind never have had, authoritative documents of truth, and appointed channels of communication with Him. The word and the Sacraments are the characteristic of the elect people of God . . . .”<sup>1</sup>

When men realise that the Church is a Divine institution, the Body of Christ, the Temple and the Organ of the Holy Ghost, it will become to them a matter of the highest importance to know where the Church is, that they may belong to it, and so be within the Ark of Safety.

<sup>1</sup> Newman's *Arians of the Fourth Century*. 4th Edition, pp. 79, 80.

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE DIVISIONS IN THE CHURCH.

THE idea of unity underlies all the figures by which the Church is described in the New Testament. The Church is there spoken of as,—the Kingdom of heaven, the Body of Christ, the Temple of God, the Bride, the branches of the Vine. There is but one Kingdom, one Body, one Temple, one Vine. This “oneness” or unity, exists in reference to Jesus Christ; He is the King of the Kingdom, the Head of the Body, the Builder of the Temple, the Bridegroom, the Vine. The great thought running through all the New Testament descriptions of the Church, is that of the Church’s unity in itself through its union with Jesus Christ.

In the New Testament, the word “church” is used in two senses. It is used as it has been used so far in this book, of the *one* Divine society founded by Jesus Christ. Again, it is used of lesser parts of the one Church, as for instance when we read in the Revelation of the seven churches of Asia.<sup>1</sup> But we are not to suppose that such churches were independent or rival bodies of Christians; they were merely portions of the one world-wide society which Christ described as “my Church.”<sup>2</sup> The unity of the Church rests upon Jesus Christ, its

<sup>1</sup> Chapter i. 11.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matt. xvi. 18.

Divine Founder and Head. The Church is one in itself, because it is one with Him. The Church is one *in* Him, and one *with* Him. Of this unity the Episcopate, or order of bishops, is the pledge. This is the view taken by St. Cyprian in his great work "on the Unity of the Church." In commenting on St. Paul's words,—"There is one Body and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling; one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God and Father of all . . .,"<sup>1</sup> St. Cyprian writes,—"This unity firmly should we hold and maintain, especially our bishops, presiding in the Church, in order that we may approve the Episcopate itself to be one and undivided. Let no one deceive the brotherhood by falsehood; no one corrupt the truth of our faith by a faithless treachery. The Episcopate is one; it is a whole, in which each enjoys full possession. The Church is likewise one, though she be spread abroad and multiplies with the increase of her progeny; even as the sun has many rays, yet one light; and the boughs of a tree are many, yet its strength is one, seated in the deep lodged root: and as when many streams flow down from one source . . . unity is preserved in the source itself."<sup>2</sup>

St. Cyprian teaches that the unity of the Church depends upon the unity of the order of bishops sent by Christ, and upon the Sacraments which they minister. He teaches that the Episcopate forms but one undivided body, each bishop being in direct communication

<sup>1</sup> Eph. iv. 4-6.

<sup>2</sup> Treatise V. on the *Unity of the Church*, Oxford Translation. Library of the Fathers. 1876. p. 134.

with Jesus Christ, and the minister of His grace, which is the life of the Church.

Thus the unity of the Church is not destroyed by death, for death cannot sever union with Christ. The greater part of the Church is not on earth, but in paradise. "Only the lower limbs of the Body of Christ are upon earth." The great majority of Christians are in the next world, where they are still in the unity of the Church, for they are one with Christ Who is the centre of unity. "The centre of unity is not on earth, but in heaven."

But what about the sad divisions in the Church on earth, which are only too painfully visible? These divisions are, to everyone who realises what Christ meant His Church to be, a cause of sorrow and shame. The divisions in the Church are a spectacle at which angels weep, whilst devils rejoice. From the first, such divisions were not uncommon. St. Paul speaks of them in his Epistles more than once. These early divisions were generally of brief duration, affecting, whilst they lasted, but small portions of the Church. But as time went on, greater and more serious disunion took place, which has lasted for centuries, and still continues. First and foremost there is the division between East and West, which dates from the twelfth century; and later there is that further division which took place in the West between the Church of Rome and that of England, a large part of Germany, and other European countries, which has already lasted for 350 years.

Let us briefly consider the causes which led to these lamentable divisions.

## i.

First, the division between East and West, commonly called "the Great Schism;"—We can trace the working out of this great rent in the Church to various causes. Amongst these we may instance the use of different languages. The theological language of the East was Greek, that of the West was Latin. As fresh heresies arose, new words had to be coined to state the truths assailed. It is not hard to see what grave difficulties would arise in selecting terms which, whilst they shut out error, conveyed the same meaning to persons of different languages. Dr. Newman says,—“The difficulties of forming a theological phraseology for the whole of Christendom were obviously so great . . . not only had the words to be adjusted and explained which were peculiar to different schools or traditional in different places, but there was the formidable necessity of creating a common measure between two, or three languages,—Latin, Greek and Syriac. The intellect had to be satisfied, error had to be successfully excluded, parties the most contrary to each other, and the most obstinate, had to be convinced.”<sup>1</sup>

A second and more serious cause of separation between East and West, arose in reference to what is known as “the filioque clause” in the Nicene Creed. This Creed, as its name shews, was first drawn up by the General Council held at Nicæa in 325 to which we referred on page 37.

As the Creed left the Council it concluded with the words,—“And I believe in the Holy

<sup>1</sup> *Arians of the Fourth Century.* Appendix. pp. 433, 434.



Ghost." On the rise of a new heresy denying the Godhead of the Holy Ghost, a second General Council was called. One hundred and fifty bishops assembled at Constantinople, and added further statements to the Creed of Nicæa. This was in the year 381. In its completed form, the conclusion of the Creed ran thus,—“And I believe in the Holy Ghost, the Lord, and the Giver of Life, who proceedeth from the Father, Who with the Father and the Son together is worshipped and glorified, Who spake by the Prophets. And I believe One Catholic and Apostolic Church, I acknowledge one Baptism for the remission of sins, and I look for the Resurrection of the dead, and the life of the world to come.”

It will be observed that the words “and the Son” (in Latin “*filioque*”), to which we are accustomed, coming after “Who proceedeth from the Father,” are here omitted. As the Creed was accepted by the Council, “the *filioque* clause” was wanting.

How did the words “and the Son” find their way into the Nicene Creed, as we now know it in the West? “It was first introduced in reciting the Creed in Spain, apparently from ardent zeal in resisting the Arian heresy which had spread there in great force. The use extended from thence into France and Italy, and after a while the Roman See accepted and sanctioned it. This occurred in Charlemagne’s time.”<sup>1</sup>

It is certain that no difference of doctrine was intended by the addition, but the Easterns at once objected to it on the ground that the addition was unauthorised. They held that no

<sup>1</sup> Carter, *The Roman Question*. 2nd Edition, p. 5.

change could be made in a Creed which was received from a General Council, without the consent of a Council of equal authority. We are in justice bound to admit that their objection was a good one. A great dispute was raised, in which the Bishop of Rome supported the unauthorised addition. The Eastern Church has consistently maintained the objection all along, and maintains it still.

A third cause of division between East and West, lay in a long series of disputes between the bishops or patriarchs of Rome and Constantinople. Of these it is most painful to speak. They can only be described in the words of the Gospel,—“there was also a strife among them, which of them should be accounted the greatest.”

The early Councils allowed the first place among the five patriarchs of the Church to the bishop of Rome. But it was a primacy of honour, and not of authority,—a primacy of leadership, and not of lordship. His position in regard to the other chief bishops of the Church, was somewhat similar to that of the foreman in regard to other members of a jury. The patriarch or pope of Rome was regarded as “*primus inter pares*” i.e. first among equals; but no grant of lordship over his brother bishops was allowed him. In the disputes of which we are speaking, this was forgotten, the bishops of Rome claiming unlawful superiority over the bishops of Constantinople. There were doubtless grave faults in a lack of love and humility on both sides; but in truth it must be admitted that the bulk of the blame of the division lay with the bishops of Rome. A study of history leads to the conclusion that the Roman claims

lay at the root of the schism between East and West.

Such were the causes which led to the most lamentable disaster which has ever overtaken the Church of God, "the Great Schism" between East and West; a schism which has already lasted for more than 700 years, and still remains unhealed.

The second great rift in the Catholic body is that which took place in the West, between the Roman and Anglican and other Churches in the sixteenth century. Of this sad division, and the causes which led to it, we shall have occasion to speak more fully in the second part of this work.

ii.

The divisions between East and West, and between Rome and England may be described in St. Paul's language as "schism *in* the Body," rather than schism *from* it. No one of these three portions of the Catholic body lost any of the essentials of Church unity;—the possession of the Creeds, the Apostolic Succession, and the Divinely-appointed Ministry, and the Moral Law. There is good reason to believe that the divisions in the Church are of such a nature, that her organic unity through union with Christ, and the indwelling of His Spirit, has not been broken. There is such a thing as *internal* unity, as well as *external* unity. We believe that external unity may be broken, whilst internal unity remains undisturbed; or as Dr. Pusey puts it, that "suspended inter-communion alone does not destroy unity."

These divisions in the Body are of the nature of serious wounds rather than of amputation of limbs. They are as deep fissures or cracks upon the surface of the earth, which do not separate the earth into two or more worlds. We may regard the divisions in the Church under the figure of a serious quarrel amongst brothers, by which the natural bond of a common parentage is not broken. Brothers may be disunited, but they remain brothers still.

The only thing which can mortally affect the unity of the Church, is the loss of any of the essential links ordained by our Lord to keep us united to Himself. We may believe that nothing was done in either of the cases we are considering to cut off any of the portions of the Catholic Church from Jesus Christ.

At present the Eastern, the Roman, and the Anglican portions of the Church, make up the Catholic body, the Universal Church.<sup>1</sup> No one of these three Communions forms the whole Church, but is only a part. If a mirror was broken into three pieces, and the largest of these, having had its edges cut straight, was separately framed, this newly framed portion would have a unity of its own, but it would not be the unity of the original mirror; it would represent such an unity as is exhibited by the Roman Catholic Church at the present time.

Each of the three portions of the Church possesses, as we have said, the Creeds, the order

<sup>1</sup> It is estimated that the Roman Church comprises 170,000,000 members, the Greek Church 75,000,000 members, the Anglican Church 20,000,000 members.

“Unknown in face, in place separate, different in language, opposed, alas! in some things to one another, still before the Throne of God they are One Holy Catholic Apostolic Church.”—Dr. Pusey.

of bishops apostolically consecrated, and with the bishops the Sacraments or channels of grace by which members of the Church are united to Christ, the centre of unity. Though outwardly separated, the Church is inwardly one,—the Body of Christ, indwelt by the Holy Ghost, the Life-Giver. These divisions of which we have been speaking are exceeding sad;—they are sad, as being contrary to the mind of our Blessed Lord expressed in His great eucharistic intercession the night before He died;—they are sad, as hindering the spread of the Gospel, and the conversion of the world to Christ;—they are sad as a ground of perpetual reproach.

It is our duty to possess a spirit desirous of re-union, and to keep up such a spirit by earnest prayer, and in all ways of speech and feeling as ever ready for re-union when the path shall be opened to us. The touching words at the conclusion of Dr. Pusey's third and last Eirenicon, are worthy of record, and with them we will bring this sorrowful chapter to a close,—

“But we are children of common fathers, of those who, after having shone with the light of God within them upon earth, and set on a candlestick which shall never be hid the clear light of their inherited faith, now shine like stars in the kingdom of their Father. Sons of the same fathers, we must in time come to understand each other's language. . . . Evil days and trial-times seem to be coming upon the earth. Faith deepens, but unbelief too becomes more thorough. Yet what might not God do to check it, if those who own one Lord and one faith were again at one, and united Christendom should go forth bound in one by

Love—the full flow of God's Holy Spirit unhemmed by any of those breaks, or jars, or manglings—to win all to *His* Love Whom we all desire to love, to serve, to obey. To have removed one stumbling-block would be worth the labour of a life. But He Alone, the Author of peace and the Lover of concord, can turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the children to the fathers. 'O Lord, in the midst of the years revive Thy work; in the midst of the years make known; in wrath remember mercy.'"<sup>1</sup>

#### PRAYER FOR UNITY.

O Lord Jesus Christ, who saidst unto Thine Apostles, Peace I leave with you, my Peace I give unto you; regard not our sins, but the faith of Thy Church; and grant her that Peace and Unity which is agreeable to Thy Will, Who livest and reignest with the Father and the Holy Ghost, one God, world without end. Amen.

<sup>1</sup> Page 342.

Part Second.

---

The Church  
in  
England.



OUR LORD WITH ST. AUGUSTINE AND ST. AIDAN.

This illustration is a reproduction of the Seal of the Church House, thus described by the Archbishop of Canterbury;—"The figure of our Lord, taken from one of the most beautiful pictures of Fra Angelico, stands with parted arms upon a rock. From the rock flow out four streams of Paradise into the ocean of the great world. Below Him, still on His own rock, stand two great spiritual forefathers of England, St. Aidan, in his Celtic dress, and St. Augustine." The design "thus commemorates Christ's two Apostles, sent to our race amid the great world with the blessing of His outspread Hands."



## CHAPTER I.

### THE CONVERSION OF ENGLAND.

THERE is perhaps no subject of greater interest to an English Churchman than that which is raised by the question;—"How did the Church of God come to this land?" Various answers have been given. Some have thought that St. Paul, in his journeyings to the West, preached the Gospel here. Others, that Joseph of Arimathea, who buried our Lord, was the first missionary. Others again, that a British king named Lucius begged Eleutherus, a bishop of Rome, to send Christian teachers to this land. But there is no sufficient evidence for any of these tales, and they are rejected by historians as unreliable.

#### i.

The most probable reply to our question is thus given by Canon Bright,—“We cannot reasonably doubt that some Christians did pass over from Gaul” (the early name of France) “to our shores during the second century if not earlier, and planted here and there some settlements of the Church.”<sup>1</sup>

At the opening of the fourth century, we are met with the great story of the martyrdom of St. Alban, a Roman soldier, who was beheaded

<sup>1</sup> Bright's *Early English Church History*, p. 5.

for the faith of Christ at Verulam, now known as St. Albans, in Hertfordshire. It is a matter of history that in the year 314, three British bishops were present at the Council held at Arles, a city of Gaul; and that again in the year 359, the presence of three British bishops is noted at the Council of Ariminum in the same country.

Up to this time the historical notices of the Church in this land are brief and scanty. But we know enough to be assured that the Church of Christ was settled here early in the fourth century, with bishops in direct line from the Apostles, and the Divine Sacraments, and the true Faith.

The fact of British bishops being present at the Councils just named, affords undoubted evidence that the British Church was recognised as a true and living branch of the One, Catholic, and Apostolic Church of Jesus Christ.

## ii.

Some time after this, a terrible desolation fell over this land, and on the Church of this country, though out of it, through much suffering, a greater life was about to arise. It happened in this manner. Roman troops for some years had occupied Britain. On their departure in the fifth century, the Britons left to themselves were unable to cope with the wild tribes of the North, and to protect themselves they invited over from Germany the Saxons, a heathen tribe. The Saxons came and saved the Britons from their foes. But after a while the Saxons coveted this fair land, and determined to expel those whom

they had come to assist, massacring them, or driving them out. The Britons found safety only in the mountainous regions of Wales, and the distant moorlands of Cornwall. With the expulsion of the Britons, every vestige of the Church outside these regions perished. It was as though a sponge had passed over the country, and the night of heathenism again set in.

The Saxons, coming over from Germany in increasing numbers, took possession of the whole land, which afterwards took from them the name of England. The British Church made no attempt to convert the conquerors, and they continued in their heathenism for many years.

At last came the first movement for the conversion of the Saxons, and that too from a singular cause. By some means or other a number of Saxon boys from Britain were taken to Rome to be sold as slaves. Standing in the slave-market their fair faces and golden hair attracted the notice of a priest (or deacon) named Gregory, who made enquiries concerning their nation and religion. We give the story in the words of Canon Bright,—“Passing through the Roman market, Gregory saw some boys exposed for sale. . . . Let us try to picture him, with his ruddy face, scanty darkish hair, kindly look, and beautiful hands, as he stands still, attracted by the sad sight of those helpless lads, whose white skin and golden hair were proof enough of their Northern parentage, and were associated with a beauty of face which their unhappy condition would make all the more touching. He who, in after years, used to take pains with the teaching of his young choristers, was moved to the very

soul with pity for the slave boys: he asked from what country they came. The slave-owner—probably a Jew—answered, ‘From Britain: the people there have these fair complexions.’ Then came the question, as from Gregory’s full heart, ‘Are they heathens or Christians?’ ‘Heathens.’ He sighed, as a servant of Christ might well sigh: ‘Alas! that such bright faces should be in the power of the prince of darkness—that with outward forms so lovely, the mind within should be sick and empty of grace! How do you call their nation?’ ‘Angles.’ Then, with that fondness for playing on the sound of a name, with a serious thought under the playfulness . . . he replied, ‘’Tis well—they have Angels’ faces; it were meet they should be fellow-heirs with Angels in heaven. What is their native province?’ ‘Deira’; we might translate, Yorkshire,—for the Southern of the two Northumbrian realms may for practical purposes be identified with the land between the Tees and Humber: and Gregory’s ear, catching its name, suggested the comment, ‘They must be rescued *de ira Dei*’ (i.e. from the wrath of God). ‘One more question: who was their king?’ ‘Aella.’ ‘Alleluia, praise to God the Maker ought to be sung in those parts.’ He passed on, and saw the boys no more.”<sup>1</sup>

Soon after when Gregory became bishop of Rome, he sent out a band of some forty monks with a priest named Augustine at their head, as missionaries to convert the Saxons. They landed in Kent, and Ethelbert the king of that part of England, whose wife, a daughter of the

<sup>1</sup> *Early English Church History*, p. 36, etc.

king of Paris, was already a Christian, gave them permission to settle in the Isle of Thanet. From thence they removed to Canterbury, which now became the head-quarters of the Roman missionaries. The king was baptised, and, as was usually the case, the tribe followed his lead. In this way, a considerable part of the south-east of the island, then known as the kingdom of Kent, was converted to Christianity.

Augustine was anxious that the British Christians, who had taken refuge in Wales and Cornwall should place themselves under his authority. Two meetings were arranged between them and Augustine, the first at a place named Augustine's Oak, thought to be situated south of the river Severn, the second at Bangor situated in Wales. At the latter of these meetings seven British bishops were present. Augustine asked them to join with him in preaching to the Saxons, and to give up certain customs in which they differed from the Roman uses. They refused both requests, and also to accept him as their archbishop. The division continued until the close of the thirteenth century, when the British Church was absorbed in the province of Canterbury.

### iii.

Whilst rightly grateful to Rome for thus taking the lead in the conversion of England, we must not forget that there are other sources of our English Christianity, possessing a more extensive influence. The Roman Mission was successful as regards the kingdom of Kent, enlarging its influence as far as London, and partly into Essex, but it advanced no further.

A Roman missionary indeed, Paulinus, was sent to the North as chaplain to the bride of Edwin the king of Northumbria, a daughter of Ethelbert. For a while he succeeded in making converts. But when Edwin was slain in battle, and there was a great slaughter of his people, Paulinus fled, the Church he had founded was well-nigh destroyed, and Northumbria sank back practically into heathenism.

It was then that Oswald, who succeeded Edwin and recovered the lost kingdom of Northumbria, resolved to restore Christianity. For this purpose he sought a bishop of the Church of God. On the western coast of Scotland lies a small island named Iona,<sup>\*</sup> upon which a powerful body of Christian monks from Ireland had settled. These men were members of what is known as the Celtic Church. From Iona in the year 635, a holy bishop named Aidan came forth on his eventful mission. Bishop Lightfoot thus tells the deeply interesting story of his being sent. "Aidan was not the first choice of his spiritual superiors for this arduous work. The first missionary sent out from Iona had failed. . . . He returned speedily to Iona disheartened, reporting that these Northumbrians were a stubborn and impracticable people, with whom nothing could be done. Aidan was present at this conference. He broke in, 'Brother, it seems to me that thou hast been unduly hard upon these untaught hearers, and hast not given them first according to the Apostle's precept the milk of less solid doctrine, until gradually nurtured on the Word of God they should have strength enough

<sup>\*</sup> Iona, is a modern corruption of the name Hy, or Icolmkill: the island lies off the coast of Argyle,

to digest the more perfect lessons.' All eyes were turned upon the speaker. Here was the very man whom the work demanded. The humility, the patience, the gentle sympathy, the wise discretion, the whole character of the man flashes out in this simple, eager utterance."<sup>1</sup>

Aidan came forth from Iona, and made his head-quarters at Lindisfarne, a little island which, at low water, may be approached from the coast of Northumberland. Here, Aidan received fellow-workers from Iona, and further gathered round him twelve English boys, whom he trained to become missionaries to their heathen countrymen. It is an interesting fact that four of these boys in later years became bishops. Under Aidan and his fellows, Christianity was restored to the North. It is well to remember that Aidan neither sought nor received sanction from Rome or Canterbury, but was sent at the request of King Oswald by the Celtic Church, as missionary bishop of the North.

In comparing the work of Augustine and Aidan, Bishop Lightfoot says,—“It was in the year 635—just thirty years after the death of Augustine—that Aidan commenced his work. Though nearly forty years had elapsed since Augustine's first landing in England, Christianity was still confined to its first conquest, the south-east corner of the island, the kingdom of Kent. Beyond this border, though ground had been broken here and there, no territory

<sup>1</sup> *Leaders in the Northern Church, St. Aidan*, pp 43, 44. Bishop Lightfoot gives a shortened account of the story as found in Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*, Book iii. chap. 5.

had been permanently acquired for the Gospel.<sup>1</sup> Then commenced those thirty years of earnest energetic labour, carried on by these Celtic missionaries and their disciples from Lindisfarne as their spiritual citadel, which ended in the submission of England to the gentle yoke of Christ.”<sup>2</sup>

A distinguished writer of the Roman Church makes a similar admission in describing the work of the Roman and Celtic missionaries in these words,—

“Of the eight kingdoms of the Anglo-Saxon confederation, that of Kent alone was exclusively won and retained by Roman monks, whose first attempts among the East Saxons and Northumbrians ended in failure. In Wessex and in East Anglia the Saxons of the West and the Angles of the East were converted by the combined action of continental missionaries and Celtic monks. As to the two Northumbrian kingdoms, and those of Essex and Mercia, which comprehended in themselves more than two-thirds of the territory occupied by the German conquerors, these four countries owed their final conversion exclusively to the peaceful invasion of the Celtic monks,<sup>3</sup> who not only rivalled the zeal of the Roman monks, but who, the first obstacles once surmounted, shewed much more perseverance and gained much more success.”<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It appears that East Anglia had been converted in the first instance by the Roman missionaries, in the person of Paulinus.

<sup>2</sup> *Leaders in the Northern Church. The Celtic Mission*, p. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Of the four missionaries first sent to the Midlands from Northumbria, three were Angles, who had however been trained under the Celtic bishop of Lindisfarne.

<sup>4</sup> Montalembert's *Monks of the West*, iv. p. 125.



## iv.

Thus far we have dwelt upon the work of Augustine and Aidan, and their disciples. But there are others of whom we must briefly speak, who shared in the conversion of England.

The year before Aidan came to Northumbria, a portion of England named Wessex received the Christian Faith at the hands of a missionary named Birinus. His origin is uncertain, but we know that he went to Rome, and on promising to preach the Gospel in parts of England which had not yet been visited by any Christian teachers, the bishop of Rome caused him to be consecrated a missionary bishop. Birinus became the first bishop of Dorchester, and laboured with great success in heathen Wessex.

There is yet the name of another founder of the Church in England to which we must refer, that of Felix. Felix came from Burgundy without any direct communication with Rome. He was consecrated abroad, as Bishop of Dunwich, a town on the coast of Suffolk, now covered by the sea, where for twenty years he laboured at the conversion of East Anglia. We have in the town of Felixstowe a survival of his name.

It is upon the foundations laid by these and such like holy men that the Church of England is built. They are our fathers in Christ, and to them we owe a vast debt of gratitude.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE SETTLEMENT OF THE ANGLO-SAXON CHURCH.

**I**N the last chapter we referred to the mixed sources of English Christianity. It will be useful now to trace the way in which the various missions of which we have spoken, were united to form the English Church, and how the English Church came to accept the authority of the bishop of Rome.

#### i.

There came at last, as might have been expected, a collision between the Roman and the Celtic missionaries, and their disciples. The customs of the two bodies differed in several particulars. The main difference was as to the time of keeping the great Easter festival; the followers of the Roman mission observing it at one time, those of the Celtic mission at another. The difference naturally caused great confusion. To solve the difficulty, a conference was held at the Abbey of Whitby, under Oswy the Northumbrian king, Oswald's successor. This was in the year 664.

By this time the belief had grown that the Church of Rome, which had been founded by the two Apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, had

specially the authority of St. Peter in its favour; and also that St. Peter himself had the keys of the kingdom of heaven to open and to shut at his will. Arguments were heard on both sides, and the king decided in favour of the Roman use, basing his decision on the idea that Rome represented St. Peter, "that door-keeper, whom I will not contradict . . . lest haply when I come to the doors of the kingdom of heaven, there should be none to unbar them." \* The result of this conference was mainly due to the influence of Wilfrid, formerly one of the twelve boys whom Aidan had gathered round him at Lindisfarne; who, though brought up by Celtic monks, had become a staunch supporter of the Roman usages.

This decision involved far more than the question of keeping Easter. It naturally followed that Rome should be looked to as the arbiter of all differences, and the referee in questions which might afterwards arise. It is however to be observed, that important as the decision at Whitby was, it was but a voluntary act on the part of the English Church acting under royal authority. There was no question of Divine right, otherwise there could have been no choice. It is quite impossible that such saintly men as the Celtic missionaries could have been ignorant, as they certainly were, of the Roman claims, if such claims were a matter of Divine right. All this is to be borne in mind, for it affects the action of the English Church at the time of the Reformation.

Bishop Lightfoot, in speaking of the decision at Whitby, says,—“This was the first rivet of the Roman yoke, which was to press so heavily

\* Bede, Book iii. chapter 25

on England in the generations to come. Yet it would be foolish to ignore the immediate advantages of this submission. The Church of England needed unity before all things. But this was impossible, while there was one Church in the North looking to Iona for guidance, and another in the South owing allegiance to Rome. Moreover, the fuller development of the English Church required that it should be drawn into the main stream of Christian civilisation, which at this time flowed through Rome. While we are thankful that the foundations of our Northumbrian Church were laid on the simplicity and devotion, the free spirit, the tenderness and love, the apostolic zeal of the missionaries of Iona, we need not shrink from acknowledging that she learnt much from the more complete organisation and the higher culture, of which Rome was then the schoolmistress." <sup>1</sup>

## ii.

This same year the yellow fever caused a dreadful mortality throughout England. Many Anglo-Saxon bishops died, and among them the archbishop of Canterbury. By this time the whole land, with the exception of Sussex, had become Christian, and a general desire arose to push forward the work of the Church. The first thing needed was to knit together the scattered missions of the Church, and for this purpose a master-mind was needed. Oswy, king of Northumbria, and Egbert, king of Kent, as the two most powerful princes, agreed that it would be well to select an Englishman to be archbishop of Canterbury. One of the Kentish

<sup>1</sup> *Leaders in the Northern Church*, p. 50.

clergy was chosen, but having gone to Rome for consecration, died there.

After some delay, the bishop of Rome made choice of a priest of the Eastern Church, named Theodore, who was consecrated at Rome in the year 668. Theodore was a Greek monk, a native of Tarsus, St. Paul's city. He was a man of years and experience, a scholar, and withal possessed with large sympathy. He arrived in our land on Sunday, May 27, A.D. 669. Shortly after his arrival he was joined by one Hadrian, who had previously been offered the archbishopric, but had declined the offer. Traversing together the whole land, they soon became acquainted with the people and their needs; organising schools and monasteries as occasion presented itself, and correcting such abuses as then existed. Theodore appears to have won his way everywhere by his tact and sympathy. With the support of the clergy, he began to carry out his great plans for the consolidation of the isolated missions of the Anglo-Saxon Church.

Theodore's primacy was a very eventful crisis in the history of the Anglo-Saxon Church. Hitherto made up of scattered missions, under his direction it was knit into an organic whole; the number of bishops was nearly doubled; the land was divided into dioceses, and the beginnings of the parochial system, as we have inherited it, were laid.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE CAUSES OF THE REFORMATION.

**I**N this chapter we purpose to trace out further stages by which the Church of England became more completely subject to the bishop of Rome; and to tell of the various abuses which crept in, and which led in the end to the Reformation in the sixteenth century.

#### i.

From the days of Theodore to the Conquest, there elapsed a period of four hundred years. During this time the power of the Roman see gradually increased, and its influence in the affairs of the Church of England grew more and more. But it acquired yet greater strength through the Norman Conquest. William the Conqueror, to establish his position according to the belief of that time, besought the Pope to sanction his expedition, and he entered England with this supposed authority. The Norman kings followed the same course. The climax to this unhappy idea of subjection to Rome was reached in the great conflict about investitures; i.e. as to whether the pope or the king should appoint to bishoprics. In the weak reign of King John, Pope Innocent III. deposed the King, and bestowed the kingdom

upon Philip of France, urging him to take possession of England, on the ground that it was part of the pope's empire. The quarrel had been as to the see of Canterbury. John, to save himself, knelt before the pope's legate, and owned that he held his crown from the pope, and that England, both in civil and ecclesiastical matters, was subject to the Roman see.

The struggle between the popes and the sovereigns of England continued till a strong king arose, Edward III. (1327-1377) who, backed by bishops and nobles, decreed that "neither John nor any other person could subject the nation to another power without the consent of the nation." An annual payment of 1000 marks known as the "CENSUS," established by King John as an acknowledgment of the dependence of the kingdom on the pope, ceased in consequence of this decree.

It is needless to speak further of the struggle between the popes and the English Government. We will only add that the results varied according to opportunities offered to either side,—the popes striving to gain their own objects, the English Government struggling for its liberties,—the strife turning in favour of one side or the other as the power alternated.

## ii.

Deep grievance's were felt at the heavy exactions pressing on both clergy and laity alike. Of these exactions we will now speak. The popes claimed "PETER'S PENCE." This was originally a voluntary offering made as far back as the year 787. partly as an alms, and

partly for the sustenance of a house for English pilgrims in Rome. With the exception of the reign of Edward III. this tax was paid regularly for a period of 700 years.

In addition to this, the popes claimed a further tax, named "ANNATES." Annates were the first fruits of vacant bishoprics and other benefices. Before a bishop could be consecrated, it was needful to possess a document called a "bull." The name was given from the Latin "bulla," which signified the leaden seal attached to such documents. These bulls were only issued by the pope, and had to be paid for. Besides this, the newly made bishop had to pay in advance the whole of the first year's income to the Roman court. Amongst the lower clergy every promotion involved the payment of annates.

But more serious than all this, was the pope's interference with the liberties of the English Church by means of what was named "PROVISIONS." By this is meant that the pope provided beforehand a person to fill the next vacancy in any benefice he named. Sometimes this claim was exercised with good effect, but frequently the reverse was the case. By means of "*provisions*," the most prominent positions, and the best livings in the Church, were filled by foreigners, many of whom resided abroad, and never even visited their parishes, knowing neither the speech nor the face of their flocks, all the time drawing the revenues of such benefices. Of these persons so "provided for" by the popes, Archbishop Trench says,— "Perhaps, taking all things into account, and above all that many thus appointed were 'persons detestable in life and morals' (so one



writing in 1311 assures us), this was in most instances the least harmful course they could pursue, and their absence the greatest favour which they could confer. . . . These '*provisions*' were resented everywhere, . . . and no wonder. The scale on which foreign ecclesiastics were quartered on the land, the extent to which the patience of Englishmen was tried, may be estimated by the fact that in the year 1240 Pope Gregory IX. sent to the archbishop of Canterbury and the bishops of Lincoln and Salisbury, requiring them to provide for three hundred Romans in the earliest vacant benefices which they had at their disposal, and restraining them from presenting any others until these his nominees had first been provided for."<sup>1</sup>

The spiritual care of the people had fallen into a state of decline which is now scarcely conceivable. The condition of things may be understood from the fact, that Cardinal Wolsey, living always at court as Chancellor and Prime Minister, held at the same time the archbishopric of York, and the three bishoprics of Tournai in Belgium, Lincoln, and Winchester. The state of ignorance among the people became such, that, as Mr. Simmons shews in his notes on *the Lay Folks' Mass Book*, as times went on, their part in the services of the Church became less and less, until the Mass became an exclusively clerical service.

<sup>1</sup> *Medieval Church History*, Second Edition, pp. 342, 343.

Mr. Aubrey Moore in his *Lectures and Papers on the History of the Reformation*, speaking of the amount of money drained from the country into the papal coffers, tells us that in the reign of Henry III. the foreign clergy drew 60,000 marks in one year, a sum larger than the revenues of the Crown.

## iii.

In all cases of difference, the Roman see came to be regarded as the final "COURT OF APPEAL." It was no doubt an advantage to be able to carry causes to an independent and disinterested authority in a distant land. By means of such appeals it is easy to see what an enormous power was given to the pope. In the hands of some popes this power was used wisely, and with undoubted impartiality. In other hands, alas, the greed of gold entered in, and a grievous system of bribery prevailed, bribery so shameless that it is a pain even to refer to it at all.

The late Archbishop Trench speaks very strongly as to the abuses which eventually prevailed in the Roman court. He says,— "the whole organisation" of the Church "seemed little better than a vast and elaborate machinery for the wringing, under every conceivable pretext, of the greatest possible amount of money from the faithful, and hardly seeming to exist for any other end. . . . Time would fail me were I to enumerate all, or nearly all, the devices by which it was sought to fill full the papal exchequer. Marvellous indeed was the ingenuity which some of these displayed. For example, it was claimed, —Clement IV. being the first who advanced this claim,—that all dignities, benefices and the like, which became vacant through the death of the beneficiary while at Rome, should for the next turn be in the pope's gift. But the matter did not rest here. Again and again the net was stretched wider, and at the same time its meshes woven closer, that it

might embrace more and more within its folds. Thus Boniface VIII. extended the claim, so as to include every ecclesiastical office held by persons dying within two days' journey of the spot where at the time of death the Curia might be. It was a fruitful source of revenue. In the necessity of things there was a constant influx of the higher ecclesiastics to Rome; and these, detained there by interminable suits or by other causes, were exposed, not to speak of the ordinary chances of mortality, to the deadly Roman fevers, which then as now were ever watching for their prey."<sup>1</sup>

What the effect of this traffic in holy things had upon the souls of the people, it is not difficult to see. How could the people respect the clergy who had obtained their right to minister the things of God by such utterly unworthy methods?

iv.

But there were behind these glaring scandals to which we have referred, other more serious abuses affecting the spiritual life of the people; of these it is our duty to speak honestly yet sorrowfully.

First, as to what were known as "INDULGENCES." About the year 1510, Pope Leo X. was raising money to build the great church of St. Peter at Rome. To aid this object, the sale of Indulgences was suggested by some of his advisers, and permitted by the pope himself. At the first, these Indulgences related only to relief from Church censures; and it was taught that they could only avail for those who

<sup>1</sup> *Medieval Church History*, pp. 339, 344, 345.

had the proper disposition of heart. But these limitations were soon overpassed. A corrupt teaching prevailed that in the intermediate state, or place of waiting between death and judgment, souls were in material flames and undergoing pains which differed little, save in their temporary character, from the sufferings of the lost in eternity. These pains were regarded not only as a means of purification, but also of punishment. This place of suffering was named *purgatory*. In 1477, Pope Sixtus IV. declared that Indulgences might be obtained which would save such souls from the pain with which they were visited in purgatory.

It was urged that our Saviour's merits saved from everlasting death, but that the temporal punishment due to sin had to be borne by sinners, and that this was worked out in purgatory. It was taught moreover that our Blessed Saviour's sufferings and death were more than sufficient to pardon sin, and to redeem the world. To the merits of Christ were added those of His saints, of whom it was profanely taught that they had done more good than their own salvation demanded. These merits of Christ and of the saints were regarded as housed in a bank, upon which the pope could draw for the benefit of the living and departed.

Thus the remission of sins in this life, and relief from the punishment of sins in purgatory, came to be regarded as a gift of God which could be purchased with money. It is easy to see how all this made light of the need of repentance for sin, and "it is not wonderful that earnest preachers of repentance long before Luther should have been filled with the deepest indignation at this murder of souls,—for so

they were wont to call it,—should have declared, as one did in memorable words, that Christ is the only Indulgence, and in plainest words have warned the poor deceived people that trusting in those bought with money they were trusting in a lie.”<sup>1</sup>

Dr. Pusey considered that the sale of these Indulgences “very chiefly caused the Reformation.”

Again and again loud voices were raised calling for reform of these terrible evils, and demanding a reformation of the Church in its “head and members.” But in vain. All desires for reform by means of Councils were alike of no avail. The dread of loss of power, and other motives were too strong, and the papal court turned a deaf ear to all these demands. Instead of setting herself in the front and taking the lead in a great reform with a truthful acknowledgment of sins and imperfections, the Roman court made it a chief concern, at the time, to foil the attempts then very earnestly made to effect a wholesome reformation.

#### V.

Beyond all these abuses to which we have referred there was another nearer home, and of that we must briefly speak.

In treating of the conversion of England we referred to the part taken in that work by certain monks, as Augustine and Aidan. The word *monk* signifies one who dwells alone, but the term also applies to both priests and laymen who made a home together in religious houses, or monasteries as they were called.

<sup>1</sup> *Medieval Church History*, p. 347.

The monks bound themselves not to marry, to possess no personal property, and to live a life of obedience to rule. In the middle ages the monks played a most important and valuable part in the affairs of church and nation. The monasteries were the training schools of the clergy, the homes of art and learning, the refuge of the sick and aged. It was the monks who kept the lamp of knowledge bright in dark and dismal times, and to them England owes a large debt. But they had their day, and their glory was destined to pass away.

By degrees a great proportion of the land came into their hands, and also great wealth; the monks fell into idle and luxurious ways, and lost their fame for zeal and holiness.

Of the *friars*, or brothers as the word means, we must also speak. These were men who left the world, and devoted themselves to the service of the Church; they "embodied the ideal of the Evangelical life, as in those ages conceived, more completely than any of the preceding Orders had done. Living upon alms, and thus finding a table everywhere spread for them, they did not require, as the others did, permanent landed endowments before they could found their houses. They basked moreover in the peculiar favour not of the people only, but of the popes, who soon recognised in them their most faithful and their most efficient militia." <sup>1</sup>

The friars, as also with some exceptions the monks, placed themselves under the patronage and protection of the popes, who freed them from all control of the bishops. This exemption from episcopal control led to laxity of

discipline and morals. Moreover the monks and friars made themselves offensive to the parish priests, drawing away people from their lawful shepherds, and creating a kind of schism. This was specially the case with the friars. Of them Archbishop Trench says,—“The monks had not been permitted to celebrate, except within their own walls, the Divine offices; and for a long while there had not been more of them ordained than were actually necessary for this. But these, with other privileges, as to baptize, to hear confessions, to administer extreme unction, to bury in their own churches,—this last permission a very mine of wealth,—were all accorded to these favoured friars, who exercised their intrusive ministrations where they would, with no license obtained from the bishop, no leave granted by the parish priest. They are accused of everywhere seeking to undermine the respect of the people for their appointed guides; bidding all come to them, who knew the secrets of spiritual direction, who could discern between leprosy and leprosy; who were not dumb dogs, blind guides, as were others. And multitudes came; being only too glad to confess their sins to the wandering friar whom they never had seen before, whom perhaps they never should see again; so sparing themselves the shame of a confession to their own clergy; not to say that as a rule, if we may believe Chaucer’s word concerning the Mendicant absolver, ‘He was an easy man to give penance.’ The mischief reached such a height that Pope Innocent IV. in 1254, made some feeble efforts to revoke or limit these special privileges which his predecessors had lavished on their new favourites with so prodigal

a hand. The Orders, however, had grown too strong, and succeeded in retaining all or nearly all which had been once conceded to them."<sup>1</sup> The parish clergy were powerless to cope with the monks and friars, who were backed up by the popes. Here again was a state of things which cried aloud for remedy.<sup>2</sup>

By degrees, and for various reasons of which we have not space to speak here, the Religious Orders came to be objects of dislike to the people of England. To all these preparations for a religious revolution, must be added the spread of learning so greatly aided by the invention of printing in the year 1440. Of the latter, it has been said that it was a "new gift of tongues, which lent wings to knowledge, and put within the reach of hundreds and presently of thousands, precious lore which had hitherto been within the reach of but two or of three."

The first editions of the New Testament in the original language appeared in 1516, the very year preceding the Reformation. Men's eyes were opening to the errors and superstitions of the time, and they began to question the truth of much that they had been taught.

## vi.

England was fully ripe for a great religious revolution. Popular preachers, Wycliffe being

<sup>1</sup> *Medieval Church History*, pp. 239, 240.

<sup>2</sup> To show the extent to which the religious orders prevailed, Mr. Aubrey Moore estimates that 1200 to 1300 monasteries and friaries had been established in England. For in the State returns of ecclesiastical and monastic property, which was made in 1535, the revenue of the monasteries is stated to be about £160,000 per annum.—*History of the Reformation*, pp. 128, 130.



the chief, had been stirring the people against the many abuses of the times. The air was full of inflammable materials which only awaited some cause sufficiently exciting to set them alight. At last came the spark that set fire to the train so long prepared for the explosion;—in Germany, the sale of Indulgences to which we have referred, by the Dominican friar, Tetzel,—in England, the unrighteous resolve of Henry VIII. to divorce his queen.<sup>1</sup>

It was a time when the Roman see, if it were to preserve the unity of the Church, should have put itself at the head of the reforming movement. It did nothing of the kind, but resisted all pressure for the assembling of a Council, till it was too late. The Council of Trent summoned at length by the pope, did not meet, or put forth any decision, till the Reformation in its earliest and strongest movement was all over. The decrees of this Council were published in Elizabeth's reign A.D. 1564.

There were no doubt very grievous circumstances connected with the English Reformation, chiefly the arbitrary, cruel, and licentious dealings of Henry VIII. and the greed of Henry and his nobles in despoiling the religious houses for the sake of their lands and abounding wealth, on which they laid their hands. It has

<sup>1</sup> Whilst the sale of Indulgences was mainly *the cause* of the Reformation on the Continent, the same cannot be said of the King's divorce; it was rather *the occasion* than *the cause* of the Reformation in England. Roman Catholic controversialists strive to shew that the English Reformation stands or falls with the character of Henry VIII. and his advisers; but there can be no doubt that a crisis would have been reached in some other way, even if Henry VIII. had never existed. The Reformation, when it came, was only the final act of a long struggle.

been well said that "the prize they fought for was *the goods*, and not *the good* of the Church." But no unprejudiced mind can doubt that there were grievous superstitions that needed removal, doctrines which had to be reconciled with the Word of God, and Church order which had to be restored both in the episcopal and parochial systems, and freedom to be asserted both in civil and ecclesiastical matters. The authority of the bishops had been lowered by the extravagant claims of the Roman see, the bishops being regarded as so many curates of the pope. The great part of our contention is the truth that the authority of our bishops is derived directly from Christ Himself, and independent of the Papacy.

The appeal made by our divines during the Reformation period was to a General Council of the Universal Church, freely assembled, as against a Council meeting in Italy under the immediate influence of the Roman see.

This same appeal we have inherited; but alas! the response to the appeal seems to be more and more distant, since the doctrine of the infallibility of the pope has extinguished for the present the prospect of the calling together of a General Council, or the establishment of such intercourse between us as might conduce to mutual understanding.

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE RESULTS OF THE REFORMATION.

WE are free now to learn more about the Reformation, and its effects upon the Church and religion of the land. The word *reformation* signifies *the shaping again*, i.e. the putting something into shape which was out of shape. Reformation is not the destruction of an old thing, and the making of a new thing to take its place, but the improving of the old, so that it still lives on under restored conditions. Thus reformation is much the same as restoration. It is most important to notice that the Reformation did not change the ancient Church of England for a new Church, neither did it change the old religion for a new religion. But what it did was this,—it freed the old Church from certain grave abuses, and purified the old religion from many harmful superstitions, which, in the middle ages, had attached themselves to the Church. To some of these we have already referred in the last chapter. But there was no point where it could be said, 'here the old ends, and the new begins.'

It is only fair to admit that things went too far in more than one direction, as for example; the rejection of erroneous teaching as to the state of the dead, led to an imperfect belief in the value of prayers for the departed; or where

exaggerated teaching concerning the Eucharistic Sacrifice resulted in an imperfect recognition of this great truth; or again where the usurpation of the pope was succeeded by the tyranny of the king. These were but the natural results of a great reaction. And it is only right to say that whilst the great essentials of faith and practice were preserved to us, there were losses in less important matters, which it is our duty to strive to repair as being part of our Catholic heritage.

The changes made in the reign of Henry VIII. have been described as "nothing more or less than a revolution under the form of law." The first steps were taken in a constitutional manner. In 1530, an Act of Parliament was passed which forbade application to Rome for relief from certain English laws. These dispensations, as they were called, had caused great vexation to the Church, and the popes had no right to grant them. In 1531 all money payments claimed by the Roman see were forbidden to be paid any longer. These taxes amounted on an average to about £3,500 a year, a sum representing four times that amount of our money of to-day. In 1533 a third act was passed forbidding any appeal to Rome from the English courts. In the next year Convocation, the parliament of the Church, largely influenced by the pressure of the king, decided that the popes had no more right given them by God over the kingdom than any other foreign bishop. Whilst regretting the manner in which it was brought about, it will be seen nevertheless that these acts were simply a reclaiming of the ancient independence of the English State, and English Church.

Six years later, in 1539, the Holy Bible in English was circulated, and a few years after, the services of the Church were read in our own language. The Chalice in the Holy Sacrament was restored to the laity, who were now allowed to seek Absolution after Confession, as their consciences directed, and not of compulsion as hitherto. Much superstition concerning the Blessed Virgin Mary, and the Communion of Saints, was removed. The appeal all through the Reformation time was to the Holy Scriptures as interpreted by the teaching of the primitive Church and the fathers, and to the decisions of the General Councils of the Church. This appeal is ours to-day.

The reader must be careful to notice that no official steps were taken to sever the connection of the Church of England with that of Rome, although the nation willed to have it so, and the action of Convocation favoured it. When the actual separation with Rome came, as it did in Elizabeth's time, the Roman court struck the final blow, and caused the schism, the Pope excommunicating the Queen, and absolving her subjects from their allegiance.

The primacy in honour and precedence allowed to the Bishops of Rome in the early Councils, was in no way denied at the Reformation, and it is not denied by the Church of England now, for she acknowledges General Councils which owned it. But this primacy must be distinguished from that lordship and vexatious interference which, in the middle ages, the popes claimed and exercised in England. No steps of any kind were taken to sever the Church of England from those foreign

Churches in communion with the pope. Members of these Churches, are admitted to our Sacraments without difficulty, and clergy of these Churches are allowed to hold benefices in the English Church without re-ordination.

The Apostolic Succession was continued without break, bishops being consecrated all through Reformation times by bishops of the old Apostolic line. The Sacraments, deriving their security and value from the Apostolic Succession, were continued. The appeal to antiquity, as the test of truth, was clearer than before. Thus the Church of England issued from the Reformation a true and living branch of the One, Holy, Catholic, and Apostolic Church of Christ. In the words of Mr. Aubrey Moore,—“The continuity of the English Church was the first principle of the English Reformation, and the Apostolical Succession, so carefully preserved through all changes, was the answer to the charge of schism, as the retention of the three Creeds and the recognition of the four Councils was the answer to the charge of heresy.”<sup>1</sup> These are matters of such great importance, that we will proceed to treat of them more fully in the following chapters.

<sup>1</sup> *History of the Reformation*, p. 229.

---

“I make not the least doubt in the world, but that the Church of England before the Reformation and the Church of England after the Reformation are as much the same Church, as a garden, before it is weeded and after it is weeded, is the same garden ; or as a vine, before it be pruned and after it is pruned and freed from luxuriant branches, is one and the same vine.”—*Archbishop Bramhall's Works*, i. 2.



THE CONSECRATION OF ARCHBISHOP PARKER.



The illustration represents Bishop Barlow putting the questions to Dr. Parker, and not the actual laying on of hands, in which the four bishops present took part. See pp. 101, 102.



## CHAPTER V.

### ANGLICAN ORDERS.

AS we have already pointed out, the claim of any part of the Church to be a portion of the Catholic body, stands or falls by the Apostolic succession. Apart from this succession there is no reliable ministry. The possession of a ministry in direct line with the Apostles and the maintenance of the Catholic Faith, makes the difference between the Church and a sect. Thus the question of the validity of our Orders, i.e. whether the bishops and clergy of the Church of England are rightly ordained, is one of vital importance. "Valid consecration is the corner-stone of the whole ecclesiastical edifice."

In the last Chapter it was stated that the Apostolic succession was continued without break all through the Reformation times by bishops of the old Apostolic line. As this statement is disputed by Roman controversialists, it will be needful to devote some space to the proof of its truth.

#### i.

As Canon Carter observes,—“It is an important fact intimately affecting the inquiry, that not until the hope had passed away of any reconciliation with Rome . . . that is to

say, some years on in Elizabeth's reign, was any objection raised as to the validity of English Orders." <sup>1</sup>

One of the earliest results of the Reformation was the translation and formation of the Prayer Book in English, and with it, and as part of it, the services for ordination of the clergy,—named the Ordinal. This was completed in the year 1550, in Edward VI.'s reign. During this reign, bishops were consecrated and priests ordained according to this form. On his death, Mary succeeded to the throne, and under her the breach with Rome was, for a time, healed. The pope sent over Cardinal Pole as Legate to reconcile the Church and nation to the Roman see. As part of this process, the matter of the Orders of the clergy of Edward's time had to be examined; bishops and priests ordained by Edward's Ordinal being in possession of sees and parishes. The question arose, How were such clergy to be regarded and treated?

In dealing with this point Mr. Haddan says,—"It may not be clear what were precisely the conditions imposed; but it is clear, that, under conditions certainly short of re-ordination, both Julius III. and Paul IV. and Cardinal Pole, acting with their sanction, did accept English Orders under Mary's reign, by whatever Ordinal conferred, wherever the person so ordained submitted and was reconciled to the pope." <sup>2</sup>

The words of Pole's document refer to confirming such persons in their Orders and benefices, and not to re-ordaining them.

<sup>1</sup> *The Roman Question*, 2nd Edition, p. 78.

<sup>2</sup> *Apostolical Succession in the Church of England*. 1883. pp. 240, 241.

“Burnet, the historian, remarks on the easiness of the conditions laid down by Pole: and in particular that nothing was alleged by him against English Orders in denial of their validity.”<sup>1</sup>

## ii.

Mary died November 17, 1558, and her death was followed within a few hours by that of Pole; thus the Throne and the Archbishopric of Canterbury were vacant at the same time. Elizabeth succeeded to the Crown, and at once commenced to restore the reformed religion. Her first care was to fill the vacant Archbishopric. Her choice fell upon Matthew Parker, a man who appeared likely to maintain the liberties of the English Church against Roman interference, and sound doctrine against the heretical teaching of the foreign reformers.

After the needful preliminaries, Parker was consecrated Archbishop of Canterbury in the Chapel of Lambeth Palace on December 17, 1559 by,—

Barlow,	} Bishop elect of	{ Chichester.
Scory,		
Hodgkins, Suffragan Bishop of Bedford.		
Coverdale, once Bishop of Exeter. <sup>2</sup>		

The Lambeth register gives a long and minute account of this great event. The illustration at the commencement of this chapter represents a scene at the consecration of Arch-

<sup>1</sup> Dixon's *History of the Church of England*. Vol. iv. 330, note. See also Bishop Forbes' *Explanation of the XXXIX. Articles*. Third Edition, pp. 716, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Of these Barlow and Hodgkins had been consecrated with the old Pontifical, whilst Scory and Coverdale had been consecrated with the English Ordinal.

bishop Parker. It is taken from a picture painted by Mr. Dyce, R.A., after a careful study of the records of the event.

### iii.

The attack upon Anglican Orders turns upon the consecration of Archbishop Parker.<sup>1</sup> The objections to his consecration have regard to questions of fact and authority,—

- (1) Was he consecrated at all?
- (2) Was he consecrated by lawful authority?

(1) It was not till many years after Archbishop Parker's consecration that the fact was questioned. A miserable charge known as the "Nag's Head fable" was trumped up to disprove the consecration. Again quoting the words of Mr. Haddan,—“In 1604, i.e. forty-five years after Parker's consecration, an exiled Anglo-Romanist priest of the name of Holywood, in a controversial book printed at Antwerp, alleged that Parker and some of the other bishops were consecrated (so to call it) by a mock ceremony, all together at one time on a day unspecified at the Nag's Head tavern, by Dr. Scory (who had been really consecrated bishop in 1551), who was himself in turn consecrated in the like mock way by them. To this story other subsequent writers of the same stamp and class added a specification of three

<sup>1</sup> Even if there were any doubt as to Archbishop Parker's consecration, which we do not admit, the Apostolic succession would have been recovered in the next century in the consecration of Archbishop Laud, in whom the three lines of the Italian, Irish, and English successions met.

See *Priest's Prayer Book*, "Anglican Orders." Fifth Edition, p. 204.

or four names of the other bishops, and finally of fifteen in all. . . . During the twenty years following 1604, every Anglo-Romanist writer, with scarcely a single exception, and with suicidal eagerness, repeats the story exultingly, although in varying and contradictory forms."<sup>1</sup> The fact of Parker's consecration is now placed beyond all possible doubt, and the Nag's Head fable, which bears upon its face the mark of falsehood, is given up by all respectable controversialists. Educated Roman Catholics are now heartily ashamed of this baseless invention.<sup>2</sup>

As so often happens, God brings good out of evil; and this is true in the case of this unfortunate story, for there is hardly any fact of history which has been more carefully looked into than the consecration of Archbishop Parker. As the result of a most searching examination, the record and evidences of the event have been made public in all their fulness.<sup>3</sup>

(2) The chief consecrator of Archbishop Parker was Barlow. It has been questioned whether he was really a bishop himself.

Before answering this objection, it is well to state, that though the chief, he was not the sole consecrator of Parker. Barlow was assisted, as has been said, by three other bishops, who along with him laid their hands on Parker's head, each of the four bishops repeating the words of consecration. We quote from the

<sup>1</sup> *Apostolical Succession*, p. 180.

<sup>2</sup> See Lingard's *History of England*, Vol. vi. Appendix D.D. p. 328.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, *Apostolical Succession*; see also Courayer, *The Validity of the Ordinations of the English*. 1844. pp. 328, etc.

Record of Parker's consecration,—“After certain prayers and suffrages to God, . . . the Bishops of Chichester and Hereford, the Suffragan Bishop of Bedford, and Miles Coverdale, laying their hands upon the Archbishop, say in English,—‘Take the Holy Ghost,’ thereby following the ancient use enjoined in the Exeter Pontifical.”

The three bishops were present not only as witnesses, but as consecrators. Martène, a Roman Catholic of great repute as an authority on ritual, says,—“All the bishops who are present are not only witnesses but also co-operators, this is to be asserted beyond all manner of doubt.”<sup>1</sup> Thus, even if it were true that Barlow was not consecrated, the defect would have been made good by the bishops who assisted him. The objection to Barlow's authority rests on the fact that the record of his consecration is missing in the register at Lambeth. But this omission need cause no uneasiness, for, at the period of which we are speaking, there is evidence that the Lambeth registers were most carelessly kept. During the archbishopate of Cranmer, in whose time Barlow would be consecrated, out of a total of forty-five consecrations, eight other consecrations are also omitted, besides five omissions out of eleven translations from see to see. In the case of Pole, the previous archbishop in Mary's reign, three of his seven consecrators have no records, and there exists no entry of the consecration of Bishop Gardiner in the same reign.

But though the particular record is wanting, there is ample evidence that Barlow *was* con-

<sup>1</sup> De antiquis ritibus. I., 8, x., 16.

secrated; the various steps of his advancement to the Episcopate are clearly traceable, and much evidence exists that he acted and was treated as a bishop. As Dr. Lingard, a Roman Catholic writer, observes,—“For ten years Barlow performed all the sacred duties, and exercised all the civil rights of a consecrated bishop; he took his seat in Parliament as Lord Bishop of St. Davids. He ordained priests: he was one of the officiating bishops at the consecration of Bulkley.”<sup>1</sup> It is worthy of note that Barlow’s consecration was never disputed until eighty years after the event.

## iv.

There are other objections urged against our Orders which demand some notice.

It is said by Roman controversialists that the Ordinal of Edward is not sufficiently full. We reply, the only Sacraments tied to express forms of words and particular matter by our Lord’s appointment, are Baptism and the Eucharist. Baptism must be ministered with water, in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. The Eucharist must be celebrated with bread and wine, and the use of our Lord’s words of institution. But there is no like rule concerning Holy Orders. If there be the laying on of hands by a bishop of Apostolic line, and a formula used which makes clear the intention of the rite, all is done that is necessary. All this is fulfilled in Edward’s Ordinal. If the office of bishop is not specified in the words of consecration, neither is it in the Roman Pontifical. It has

<sup>1</sup> *Catholic Magazine*, 1834.

been said that "if the Edwardine rite be rejected for its simplicity, the consecrations of the first thousand years of Christianity must fall with it."<sup>1</sup>

There remains a further objection which is to be met, which we give and answer in the words of Canon Carter,—“There are Roman Catholics, who, allowing our Orders, yet demur to our possessing jurisdiction—that is to say, the power of exercising the spiritual gifts conveyed by Holy Orders,—the reason given being that, as they suppose, jurisdiction is conveyed only through the papal see. Jurisdiction is sometimes regarded as a gift or power superadded to the gift of Orders. But it is really nothing more than the apportioning the limits within which this gift may be exercised. It is mapping out the different fields of labour in which a bishop or a priest is free to do his proper work so long as he is true to Catholic faith and practice. To say that our bishops and priests have no jurisdiction, is simply to claim that the pope has the right and power to fix for English bishops and priests their spheres of labour. Bishops and priests have, in themselves, as a consequence of Order, their full inherent powers. All that is needed is to say, where they are free to exercise them. . . . All bishops are the successors of the Apostles, and, as a ‘co-equal power,’ to use St. Cyprian’s language, was given to all the Apostles alike, so to all bishops alike are full powers given. Such powers were involved in our Lord’s commission, and cannot be separated from it; so necessarily they pass, whole and undivided, to their successors, the Catholic Episcopate . . .

<sup>1</sup> *Priest’s Prayer Book*, p. 207.



It is surely ridiculous to say, that English bishops, who trace down from the first settlement of Christianity in England, still possessing the original sees, though under new arrangements, cannot give to English priests their place of work!"<sup>1</sup>

The idea that all jurisdiction proceeds from the pope was unheard of until the twelfth century.

v.

In reviewing the charges brought by Rome against Anglican Orders, it is evident that the case has all along been prejudged. As soon as one charge has been disproved and abandoned, it has been followed by a further charge; one cannot avoid the conclusion that the policy of the advocates of Rome has been, "Whatever are the facts of the case, Anglican Orders must be rejected in some way or other."

We will close this chapter by quoting the weighty words spoken by one of the greatest Catholic theologians and historians of this century. At the Reunion conference held at Bonn in 1874, Dr. Döllinger, speaking of Anglican Orders, said,—“The solution of the question depends solely on an examination of historical evidence, and I must give it as the result of my investigations, that I have no manner of doubt as to the validity of the episcopal succession in the English Church.

The ordinations of English bishops since the Reformation were first assailed by a now exploded story (the Nag's Head fable), and then by sundry objections, some of which rested on utterly unfounded suppositions, while others

<sup>1</sup> *Roman Question*, pp. 88, 89.

were quite as applicable, or more so, if any importance were to be attached to them, to the ordinations of Roman Catholic bishops and priests. In this matter, all turns upon the question whether Archbishop Parker and his consecrator Bishop Barlow, were validly consecrated. The consecration of the latter was first called in question eighty years after, in 1616; it is as fully proved as any historical fact of which no official record can be produced.

Parker's consecration is testified, not only by all his contemporaries, but by documents so authentic that even Lingard throws no shadow of a doubt upon them. Circumstances occurred in the Western Church before the Reformation calculated to raise far more serious doubts as to the unbroken succession and the validity of many ordinations than anything which has been alleged against English Orders."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Report of the proceedings of the *Reunion Conference at Bonn* in 1874, pp. 50, 51.





ST. AUGUSTINE'S CHAIR IN CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL.

In this chair "for many generations the primates of England have all been enthroned ; and which, though probably of a later date, may yet be rightly called 'St. Augustine's Chair ;' for though not the very one in which he sate, it no doubt represents the ancient episcopal throne in which, after the fashion of the bishops of that time, he sate behind the Altar (for that was its proper place, and there, as is well known, it once stood), with all his clergy round him, as may still be seen in several ancient Churches abroad."

*Stanley's Memorials of Canterbury*, 1855, p. 22.

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE APOSTOLICAL SUCCESSION IN THE SEE OF CANTERBURY.

THE following list contains the names of the Archbishops of Canterbury from the conversion of the Saxons to Christianity in the year 597, to the year 1893. During this period of thirteen hundred years, there have been ninety-one occupants of the chair of St. Augustine, the first Archbishop.

- |                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Augustine.  | 20. Athelm.             |
| 2. Lawrence.   | 21. Wulfhelm.           |
| 3. Mellitus.   | 22. Odo.                |
| 4. Justus.     | 23. Dunstan.            |
| 5. Honorius.   | 24. Ethelgar.           |
| 6. Deusdedit.  | 25. Siricius.           |
| 7. Theodore.   | 26. Elfric.             |
| 8. Brightwald. | 27. Elphege.            |
| 9. Tatwine.    | 28. Liring.             |
| 10. Nothelm.   | 29. Ethelnoth.          |
| 11. Cuthbert.  | 30. Eadsige.            |
| 12. Bregwin.   | 31. Robert of Jumièges. |
| 13. Lambert.   | 32. Stigand.            |
| 14. Ethelard.  | 33. Lanfranc.           |
| 15. Wulfred.   | 34. Anselm.             |
| 16. Theogild.  | 35. Ralph of Escures.   |
| 17. Ceolnoth.  | 36. William of Corboil. |
| 18. Ethelred.  | 37. Theobald.           |
| 19. Phlegmund. | 38. Thomas à Becket.    |

- |                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 39. Richard.           | 66. Cranmer.    |
| 40. Baldwin.           | 67. Pole.       |
| 41. Hubert.            | 68. Parker.     |
| 42. Langton.           | 69. Grindall.   |
| 43. Grant.             | 70. Whitgift.   |
| 44. Rich.              | 71. Bancroft.   |
| 45. Boniface of Savoy. | 72. Abbot.      |
| 46. Kilwardby.         | 73. Laud.       |
| 47. Peckham.           | 74. Juxon.      |
| 48. Winchelsey.        | 75. Sheldon.    |
| 49. Reynolds.          | 76. Sancroft.   |
| 50. Mepeham.           | 77. Tillotson.  |
| 51. Stratford.         | 78. Tenison.    |
| 52. Bradwardine.       | 79. Wake.       |
| 53. Islip.             | 80. Potter.     |
| 54. Langham.           | 81. Herring.    |
| 55. Whittlesey.        | 82. Hutton.     |
| 56. Sudbury.           | 83. Secker.     |
| 57. Courtney.          | 84. Cornwallis. |
| 58. Arundel.           | 85. Moore.      |
| 59. Chicheley.         | 86. Sutton.     |
| 60. Stafford.          | 87. Howley.     |
| 61. Kemp.              | 88. Sumner.     |
| 62. Bouchier.          | 89. Longley.    |
| 63. Morton.            | 90. Tait.       |
| 64. Dean.              | 91. Benson.     |
| 65. Warham.            |                 |

# CHAPTER VII.

---

## THE BISHOPS

OF THE

ANGLICAN CHURCH,

IN COMMUNION WITH

THE SEE OF CANTERBURY.

---

### PROVINCE OF CANTERBURY.

1. The Archbishop of Canterbury.

The Bishops of,—

2. London.
3. Winchester.
4. Bangor.
5. Bath & Wells.
6. Chichester.
7. Ely.
8. Exeter.
9. Gloucester & Bristol.
10. Hereford.
11. Lichfield.
12. Lincoln.
13. Llandaff.
14. Norwich.
15. Oxford.
16. Peterborough.
17. Rochester.
18. St. Alban's.
19. St. Asaph.

20. St. David's.

21. Salisbury.
22. Southwell.
23. Truro.
24. Worcester.

The Suffragan Bishops of,—

25. Bedford.
26. Colchester.
27. Coventry.
28. Derby.
29. Dover.
30. Guildford.
31. Leicester.
32. Marlborough.
33. Nottingham.
34. Reading.
35. Shrewsbury.
36. Southwark.
37. Swansea.

## 112 *The Bishops of the Anglican Church.*

### PROVINCE OF YORK.

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. The Archbishop of York. | 8. Ripon.                  |
| The Bishops of,—           | 9. Sodor & Man.            |
| 2. Durham.                 | 10. Wakefield.             |
| 3. Carlisle.               | The Suffragan Bishops of,— |
| 4. Chester.                | 11. Barrow-in-Furness.     |
| 5. Liverpool.              | 12. Beverley.              |
| 6. Manchester.             | 13. Hull.                  |
| 7. Newcastle.              | 14. Richmond.              |

### BISHOPS OF THE COLONIES, &c.

#### ASIA.

1. Calcutta.
2. Bombay.
3. Chota Nagpur.
4. Colombo.
5. Lahore.
6. Lucknow.
7. Madras.
8. Rangoon.
9. Singapore and Labuan.
10. Travancore and Cochin.
11. Victoria.
12. *At* Jerusalem.

#### AUSTRALIA.

13. Sydney.
14. Adelaide.
15. Ballarat.
16. Bathurst.
17. Brisbane.
18. Goulburn.
19. Grafton and Armidale.
20. Melbourne.
21. Newcastle.
22. North Queensland.
23. Perth.
24. Riverina.
25. Rockhampton.
26. Tasmania.

#### NEW ZEALAND.

27. Wellington.
28. Auckland.
29. Christchurch.
30. Dunedin.
31. Nelson.
32. Waiapu.

#### AFRICA, &c.

33. Cape Town.
34. Bloemfontein.
35. Graham's Town.
36. Kaffraria.
37. Maritzburg.
38. Mashonaland.
39. Pretoria.
40. St. Helena.
41. Mauritius.
42. Sierra Leone.

#### NORTH AMERICA.

##### *Province of Canada.*

43. Algoma.
44. Fredericton.
45. Huron.
46. Montreal.
47. Niagara.
48. Nova Scotia.
49. Ontario.
50. Quebec.
51. Toronto.



BISHOPS OF THE COLONIES, &c. (continued.)

*Province of Rupertsland.*

WEST INDIES AND SOUTH AMERICA.

52. Rupertsland.
53. Athabasca.
54. Calgary & Saskatchewan.
55. Mackenzie River.
56. Moosonee.
57. Qu'Appelle.
58. Selkirk.
59. Caledonia.
60. Columbia.
61. New Westminster.
62. Newfoundland.

63. Antigua.
64. Barbados and Windward Isles.
65. British Honduras.
66. Falkland Isles.
67. Guiana.
68. Jamaica.
69. Nassau.
70. Trinidad.

EUROPE.

71. Gibraltar.

MISSIONARY BISHOPS.

72. Central Africa.
73. Corea.
74. Eastern Equatorial Africa.
75. Honolulu.
76. Japan.
77. Lebombo.

78. Melanesia.
79. Madagascar.
80. Niger.
81. Ningpo, or Mid-China.
82. North China.
83. Nyasaland.
84. Zululand.

BISHOPS OF THE SCOTTISH CHURCH.

1. Brechin.
2. Aberdeen.
3. Argyll and the Isles.
4. Edinburgh.

5. Glasgow and Galloway.
6. Moray and Ross.
7. St. Andrew's, &c.

BISHOPS OF THE IRISH CHURCH.

1. The Archbishop of Armagh.
2. The Archbishop of Dublin.
3. Meath.
4. Clogher.
5. Derry, &c.
6. Down, Connor, &c.

7. Kilmore, Elphin, &c.
8. Tuam, &c.
9. Cashel, &c.
10. Cork, Cloyne, &c.
11. Killaloe, &c.
12. Limerick, &c.
13. Ossory, &c.

## BISHOPS OF THE AMERICAN CHURCH.

- |                      |                                    |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Alabama.          | 35. New Hampshire.                 |
| 2. Albany.           | 36. New Jersey.                    |
| 3. Arkansas.         | 37. New Mexico.                    |
| 4. California.       | 38. New York.                      |
| 5. „ Northern.       | 39. „ Central.                     |
| 6. Chicago.          | 40. „ Western.                     |
| 7. Colorado.         | 41. North Carolina.                |
| 8. Connecticut.      | 42. N. Dakota.                     |
| 9. Delaware.         | 43. Ohio.                          |
| 10. East Carolina.   | 44. „ Southern.                    |
| 11. Easton.          | 45. Oregon.                        |
| 12. Florida.         | 46. Pennsylvania.                  |
| 13. Fond du Lac.     | 47. „ Central.                     |
| 14. Georgia.         | 48. Pittsburgh.                    |
| 15. Indiana.         | 49. Quincy.                        |
| 16. Iowa.            | 50. Rhode Island.                  |
| 17. Kansas.          | 51. South Carolina.                |
| 18. Kentucky.        | 52. South Dakota.                  |
| 19. Long Island.     | 53. Springfield.                   |
| 20. Louisiana,       | 54. Tennessee.                     |
| 21. Maine.           | 55. Texas.                         |
| 22. Maryland.        | 56. „ North.                       |
| 23. Massachusetts.   | 57. „ West.                        |
| 24. Michigan.        | 58. The Platte.                    |
| 25. „ Western,       | 59. Vermont.                       |
| 26. Milwaukee.       | 60. Virginia.                      |
| 27. Minnesota.       | 61. „ West.                        |
| 28. Mississippi.     | 62. Washington.                    |
| 29. Missouri.        | 63. Wyoming and Idaho.             |
| 30. „ West.          | <i>Foreign Missionary Bishops.</i> |
| 31. Montana.         | 64. China.                         |
| 32. Nebraska.        | 65. Haiti.                         |
| 33. Nevada and Utah. | 66. Western Africa.                |
| 34. Newark.          |                                    |

---

“The English Church with its Scotch sister, and American daughter, the latter outnumbering in its Episcopate the mother, and the Colonial Churches in all parts of the world, increasing in a ratio to which past ecclesiastical history affords no parallel.” Neale’s *Liturgiology*, p. 284.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE ANGLICAN PRINCIPLE AS TO THE TRUTH.

**I**T is important that we should have a clear understanding of the principle of the English Church as to the truth or rule of faith, as that principle was asserted at the Reformation.

#### i.

The Protestant Sects regard the Bible as the source from which every one may draw his own conclusions as to the truth. What has been held in all ages by the greatest teachers counts for little, if anything, in the way of authority. According to this view, every man becomes his own interpreter of the Bible, which so used may cease to be the word of God, and may become the word of man. The necessary result of such private interpretation of the Scriptures is, that an endless variety of explanations may be given as to the meaning of God's word. This is one form of error concerning the ascertaining of the truth.

Roman Catholics are bound by the decrees of the Council of Trent. This Council declares that "the truth is contained in the written books *and* in the unwritten traditions, and that it receives and venerates with an equal feeling

of piety and reverence all the books of the Old and New Testament . . . and also the traditions relating as well to faith as to morals, as having, either from the word of Christ Himself or the dictation of the Holy Ghost, been preserved by continuous succession in the Catholic Church.”<sup>1</sup> Thus the tendency of the Roman Church is to allow that an article of faith may rest upon Church teaching alone, apart from Scripture basis. The modern Roman Church has also committed itself to a theory of development, which leaves the way open to continual additions to that “faith” which “was once for all delivered unto the Saints.”<sup>2</sup> This idea of development has gained ground chiefly since the Reformation. The century in which we live, has witnessed the addition of two new doctrines to the Catholic Creed. We refer to the doctrines of “the Immaculate Conception of the Blessed Virgin Mary,” and the “Infallibility of the Pope,” belief in which has been made necessary to salvation, or to communion in the Roman Catholic Church.

If Protestants have relied upon the private interpretation of Scripture at the expense of tradition, Roman Catholics have relied upon tradition at the expense of Scripture.

It is abundantly clear that neither the Protestant, nor the modern Roman Catholic, principle as to the truth, of which we have spoken, is that of the Church in its earliest days. They are both novelties unknown for centuries, and fraught with great dangers, as experience and history testify. They are novelties from which, as we may thankfully feel, the Church of Eng-

<sup>1</sup> Sess. IV.

<sup>2</sup> Jude 3, R.V.

land, its real principle being properly understood, is delivered.

ii.

What then is the principle of the Church of England as to the groundwork or rule of faith? What is the Anglican standard in regard to the truth? We reply,—that of the ancient and undivided Church, that,—

THE HOLY SCRIPTURES ARE THE FINAL AUTHORITY IN QUESTIONS RELATING TO CATHOLIC TRUTH, THE CHURCH BEING THE INTERPRETER OF THOSE SCRIPTURES, AND THAT TOO IN THE SENSE IN WHICH THE FATHERS HAVE GENERALLY UNDERSTOOD THEM. This is the ground-work of the celebrated rule of Vincentius;—"The Canon of Scripture is perfect, and most abundantly of itself sufficient for all things." But "since the Scripture being of itself so deep and profound, all men do not understand it in one and the same sense, but divers men, diversely, this man, and that man, this way and that way, expound and interpret the sayings thereof, so that to one's thinking, so many men, so many opinions almost may be gathered out of them . . . for the avoiding of error, the Prophets and Apostles must be expounded according to the rule of the Ecclesiastical and Catholic sense."\*

This principle of the primitive Church is stated more simply by Dr. Pusey,—“What is matter of faith must be capable of being proved out of Holy Scripture; yet that, not according to the private sense of individuals, but according to the uniform teaching of the Church.”

\* Quoted by Dr. Pusey, *The Rule of Faith*, p. 35.

Thus Holy Scripture and Catholic tradition are joint and mutually corrective sources of the faith. The faith was delivered to the Saints, and given to the Church, before the New Testament was written; yet the whole faith so given was, by God's providence, afterwards contained in Scripture. The Church received her faith before she received her Scriptures, yet the whole of the faith so received can be proved by Scripture. When the Christian revelation was written down and accepted by the Church, the Church became its interpreter, being constituted by God for this purpose, and being aided by the Holy Spirit in fulfilling it.

It will be seen that the Catholic principle, as we have stated it, is the safeguard against the results of the two erroneous methods of arriving at the truth, stated at the beginning of this chapter.

### iii.

To this Catholic principle, the Church of England committed herself unreservedly at the Reformation. To this principle, our great divines appealed all through Reformation times. To this principle, the Church of England appeals to-day. In the words of Dr. Pusey "The Church of England has, from the Reformation, held implicitly, in purpose of heart, all which the ancient Church has ever held." That this is the Anglican position, is abundantly evident. Amongst such evidence we may quote the canon of Convocation which imposed subscription to the Articles upon the clergy in Elizabeth's reign. This canon directs preachers "to be careful that they never teach ought in a sermon,

to be religiously held and believed by the people, except what is agreeable to the doctrine of the Old and New Testaments, and what the Catholic fathers and ancient bishops have collected out of the same doctrine." Together with Holy Scripture, the Church of England preserves and teaches the three Creeds,—the Apostles' Creed, the Nicene Creed, and the Creed of St. Athanasius. The ground upon which she bids us accept them, is, that "they may be proved by most certain warrants of Holy Scripture."<sup>1</sup> It is a striking proof of our claim to orthodoxy, that we alone, of the whole Catholic Church, recite the Athanasian Creed in the public services of the Church. This Creed commences with the assertion, that "whosoever will be saved, before all things it is necessary that he hold the Catholic Faith."

The Church of England also recognises the authority of the first four General Councils.<sup>2</sup> It was in these Councils that all the great heresies were rejected, and the main truths of the Catholic faith asserted.

If this be our principle as to the truth, it may be asked,—How is it that there exists such diversity of teaching amongst us? There is no doubt a good deal of diversity on certain points, not so much touching the main doctrines

<sup>1</sup> *Article viii.*

<sup>2</sup> *Homily against the Peril of Idolatry, p. 2.*

<sup>1</sup> *Eliz. c. i. § 36.*

"We, Bishops of Christ's Holy Catholic Church, professing the faith of the primitive and undivided Church, as based on Scripture, defined by the first four General Councils, and re-affirmed by the Fathers of the English Reformation."  
—*From the Resolutions proposed to the Lambeth Conference, 1867.*

*This refers to England. It is not so.*

of the Creed (e.g. the doctrines of the Trinity, the Incarnation, the Atonement, or the Divinity of the Holy Spirit), as on matters of practice, and the mode of carrying out our services, and the meaning given to some of our usages. This is to some extent unavoidable, seeing that in a great body of teachers there will be variety of thought and feeling. Judging by St. Paul's Epistles, we see that in the Apostles' times, there was a good deal of disagreement, and this upon important points, which often greatly troubled the minds of the Apostles. Amongst ourselves there is great unwillingness to carry authority too far, so as to crush the individual energies of earnest men. Often truth comes out the more clearly by allowing these differences to appear; and we are warned by our Lord against too great exercise of discipline, "lest while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the wheat with them."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xiii. 29.

---

"To believe the Scripture, and the Creeds, in the sense of the ancient Primitive Church; to receive the four great General Councils, so much magnified by antiquity; to believe all points of doctrine generally received as fundamental in the Church of Christ; is a faith, in which to live and die cannot but give salvation."—Archbishop Laud's *Conferences with Fisher*, xxxviii. 1.



Part Third.

---

The  
Faith and Practice  
of  
The Church.

“NEXT TO A SOUND RULE OF FAITH, THERE IS NOTHING OF SO MUCH CONSEQUENCE AS A SOBER STANDARD OF FEELING IN MATTERS OF PRACTICAL RELIGION: AND IT IS THE PECULIAR HAPPINESS OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND TO POSSESS, IN HER AUTHORISED FORMULARIES, AN AMPLE AND SECURE PROVISION FOR BOTH.”—

*Advertisement to ‘The Christian Year,’ by the Rev. John Keble.*

## CHRISTIAN DUTY.

**I**N the previous part of this book, we have striven to give, in general outline, a truthful account of the English Church from its foundation by St. Augustine, St. Aidan, and their fellow missionaries, to its issue from the Reformation. Since that time, although there have been great movements within the Church,\* yet there has been no change in its constitution. We have established the position of the English Church from its beginning down to the present, as a true and living portion of the Holy Catholic Church of Jesus Christ.

Having established our position, we will proceed to consider our duties as Catholic Christians. We will pass on to learn what, as members of the Church, we are bound to believe and to do.

The Church being the covenanted sphere of Divine grace and truth, it is our duty to seek safety to our souls within its fold. But it need hardly be said that mere membership in the Catholic Body will not avail to our salvation, unless we believe truly and act faithfully.

In Holy Baptism, we were made members of the Church of Christ, and on receiving that Sacrament we made certain promises.

We promised,—

To renounce the enemies of God, the world, the flesh, and the devil :

To believe all the articles of the Christian faith : and,

To keep God's holy will and commandments.

In other words, we engaged to avoid the evil, to believe the truth, and to do the right.

The keeping of these promises forms our part in the Baptismal covenant or agreement, and is the condition of salvation. For this reason it was right that these promises should be made in our name in Baptism, even though we were unconscious infants at the time. The observance of the baptismal promises is summed up in the words, *Christian Duty*.

Christian Duty comprises faith and practice ; what we ought to believe, and what we ought to do. We will first consider what we ought to believe. and then what we ought to do.

## CHAPTER I.

### THE FAITH OF THE CHURCH.

#### I. CHRISTIAN BELIEF.

**I**T is most important that we should not only *act* aright, but also *believe* aright. The true faith is not that which every man may fancy to be true, but that which God has revealed. It is our duty humbly to accept all that God plainly declares to be true without questioning, and to accept it on His authority as the Revealer; to act otherwise, is to be guilty of great presumption. It is most important too, because our faith colours our life. We are not likely to act aright, unless we believe aright. Many a man has been ruined by investing money in an undertaking which he believed to be sound, but which proved not to be so. Errors in faith lead to imperfections, and often to errors in life. St. Jude bids us to "build up ourselves on our most holy faith."<sup>1</sup> But we cannot build securely upon faulty foundations.

For these great reasons it is quite wrong to say, as so many do,—“It does not matter what I believe, so long as I do what is right.” The Holy Scriptures praise those “who keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus.”<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Verse 20.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. xiv. 12.

Having said this, we commence by asking,—“What am I bound to believe as a member of the Church of Christ?” The answer to this question is,—“YOU ARE BOUND TO BELIEVE THE CATHOLIC FAITH AS IT IS SET DOWN IN THE CREEDS,” which are the work of God the Holy Ghost in the Church.

The word “creed” is taken from the Latin word “credo,” I believe. The Greek term for the Creed is “the symbol;” this word signified the earnest-money paid to secure a contract, and also the pass-word of the soldier. Thence it came to mean the belief to which a Christian pledged himself at Baptism, as a part of the Christian covenant or contract; or the formula by which a Christian could make himself known to fellow Christians.

Another name is the “Rule of Faith;” i.e. something by which teaching may be measured or tested.

The Creeds took their origin from the need of some formula by which persons desiring admission into the Church, could profess their faith at Baptism. The root and germ of the Christian Creeds is found in our Lord’s words, “Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.”<sup>1</sup>

No one form of creed seems to have been enforced by authority at first, but, growing as they did out of the baptismal formula, they have all the same skeleton, whilst the words and the order of each varied in different Churches. The use of creeds is earlier than the writing of the first books of the New Testa-

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 19.

ment. In St. Paul's Epistles we find traces of the Creed in his allusion to "the faithful saying,"<sup>1</sup> "the form of sound words,"<sup>2</sup> "the deposit."<sup>3</sup>

## II. THE THREE CREEDS.

The Creeds are three in number; viz.

- i. The Apostles' Creed.
- ii. The Nicene Creed.
- iii. The Creed of St. Athanasius.

### i. THE APOSTLES' CREED.

The Apostles' Creed receives its name from the fact that it is derived from the teaching of the Apostles. It contains the main truths which they preached to the world, speaking only of those things which they had seen and heard, while they followed our Lord Jesus.

Although references to, and quotations from, the Creeds are met with in early Christian writers, yet a complete creed is not found in any document until late in the second century. The Apostles' Creed, as we have it; is the Roman form of the Western Creeds, and is first found in the exposition of Rufinus in the fourth century. The late appearance of the Creed in writing is accounted for by the fact that it was regarded as a precious secret, and committed to memory, being taught to persons

<sup>1</sup> 1 Tim. i. 15; iv. 9. 2 Tim. ii. 11. Titus i. 9; iii. 8.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Tim. i. 13.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Tim. vi. 20. 2 Tim. i. 12 (*R. V. Margin*).

just before baptism. In early times candidates were long under instruction for baptism, which, as a rule, was ministered by the bishop but twice a year,—at Easter and at Whitsuntide. On the eve of baptism, the Creed was taught, accompanied by a long and solemn address, the whole ceremony being named the “*traditio symboli*,” i.e. the delivery of the pass-word. Then, at baptism, on the question being put, each recited the Creed which had just been taught. This was called the “*redditio symboli*,” i.e. the giving back of the pass-word, upon which they were baptised. The Apostles’ Creed is a distinct and simple declaration of faith, thus differing from the Nicene Creed which not only states the articles of the faith, but also adds clauses which shut out opposite errors. It differs also from the Athanasian Creed, which illustrates and in some cases explains the truths; while it not only contradicts, but also condemns errors.

The Church of England has given considerable prominence to the Apostles’ Creed. It is printed in the Book of Common Prayer seven times. Speaking of this Creed, Bishop Forbes writes,—“From the days of St. Paul to this, these articles have been the sum and substance of Christianity. Nothing less than that is sufficient. Nothing more than that is of absolute necessity to salvation. When a child is baptised, the Church demands no more of him, or of his sponsors, than an assent to the Apostles’ Creed—and when the Christian soul is going out of the world to meet its Judge, it is in the terms of the same Creed that the dying man is interrogated.”<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Explanation of the XXXIX. Articles.* 3rd Ed. p. 132.



## ii. THE NICENE CREED.

The Nicene Creed is the Eastern exposition of the faith, and was drawn up by the fathers of the first General Council held at Nicæa A.D. 325. This Council was summoned to resist the false teaching of Arius, who held that our Blessed Lord was a creature, and not perfect God. On referring to this Creed, it will be seen how completely it sets forth the Divine Nature of Jesus Christ. The latter part of the Creed likewise contains a full statement of the Divine Nature of the Holy Spirit, and was added at the second General Council A.D. 381. This Council met at Constantinople to condemn the false teaching of Macedonius, who denied the Godhead of the Holy Spirit. Hence, this Creed is sometimes spoken of as the Creed of Constantinople, though generally as the Nicene Creed. The Nicene Creed comes to us with the highest possible authority. It was imposed by two General Councils, and is *the Creed*, "par excellence," of the Church; it is honoured with a place in the chief Service of the Church, the Holy Eucharist.

## iii. THE CREED OF ST. ATHANASIUS.

In the disputes with Arius and his followers, Athanasius, a chief speaker at the Council of Nicæa, was the leader of the orthodox party. Hence, those who held the doctrine of the Council of Nicæa were popularly called Athanasians, as their opponents were called Arians. Athanasius died A.D. 373. After his death,—but at what period is uncertain,—this Creed came into use; stating and illustrating the true

doctrine in the manner usual to Athanasius and his followers. Hence, it was popularly called *the Athanasian Creed*, or the Creed held and defended by the followers of Athanasius. It soon became part of the Church-Service, and has so remained to the present time. In the Anglo-Saxon Church it was in use in the seventh century.

The solemn language which it adopts concerning unbelievers, is not to be understood of those who have never received the faith. "What things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law." <sup>1</sup> It is the

<sup>1</sup> Rom. iii. 19.

### III. COMPARISON OF

#### *The Creed of St. Athanasius.*

Whosoever will be saved : before all things it is necessary that he hold the Catholick Faith.

Which Faith except every one do keep whole and undefiled : without doubt he shall perish everlastingly.

And the Catholick Faith is this : That we worship one God in Trinity, and Trinity in Unity ;

Neither confounding the Persons : nor dividing the Substance.

For there is one Person of the Father, another of the Son : and another of the Holy Ghost.

But the Godhead of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, is all one : the Glory equal, the Majesty co-eternal.

Such as the Father is, such is the Son : and such is the Holy Ghost.

The Father uncreate, the Son uncreate : and the Holy Ghost uncreate.

The Father incomprehensible, the Son incomprehensible : and the Holy Ghost incomprehensible.

The Father eternal, the Son eternal : and the Holy Ghost eternal.

And yet they are not three eternals : but one eternal.

As also there are not three incomprehensibles, nor three uncreated : but one uncreated, and one incomprehensible.

Church's warning to those who wilfully reject the truth which God has made plain.

Creed of the Saints, and Anthem of the Blest,  
And calm-breathed warning of the kindest love,

\* \* \* \* \*

Who knows but myriads owe their endless rest  
To thy recalling, tempted else to rove?

J. KEBLE.

Such is a brief account of the three Creeds, which come to us on the authority of the Church, and which "may be proved by most certain warrants of Holy Scripture."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Article viii.*

---

#### THE CREEDS.

##### *The Nicene Creed.*

I believe in one God the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven and earth, And of all things visible and invisible :

##### *The Apostles' Creed.*

I believe in God the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven and earth :

## COMPARISON OF THE

*The Creed of St. Athanasius.*

So likewise the Father is Almighty, the Son Almighty : and the Holy Ghost Almighty.

And yet they are not three Almighties : but one Almighty.

So the Father is God, the Son is God : and the Holy Ghost is God.

And yet they are not three Gods : but one God.

So likewise the Father is Lord, the Son Lord : and the Holy Ghost Lord.

And yet not three Lords : but one Lord.

For like as we are compelled by the Christian verity : to acknowledge every Person by himself to be God and Lord ;

So are we forbidden by the Catholick Religion : to say, There be three Gods, or three Lords.

The Father is made of none : neither created, nor begotten.

The Son is of the Father alone : not made, nor created, but begotten.

The Holy Ghost is of the Father and of the Son : neither made, nor created, nor begotten, but proceeding.

So there is one Father, not three Fathers ; one Son, not three Sons : one Holy Ghost, not three Holy Ghosts.

And in this Trinity none is afore, or after other : none is greater, or less than another ;

But the whole three Persons are co-eternal together : and co-equal.

So that in all things, as is aforesaid : the Unity in Trinity, and the Trinity in Unity is to be worshipped.

He therefore that will be saved : must thus think of the Trinity.

Furthermore, it is necessary to everlasting salvation : that he also believe rightly the Incarnation of our Lord Jesus Christ.

For the right Faith is, that we believe and confess : that our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is God and Man ;

God, of the Substance of the Father, begotten before the worlds : and Man, of the Substance of his Mother, born in the world ;

Perfect God, and perfect Man : of a reasonable soul and human flesh subsisting ;

Equal to the Father, as touching his Godhead : and inferior to the Father, as touching his Manhood.

Who although he be God and Man : yet He is not two, but one Christ ;

CREEDS (continued).

*The Nicene Creed.*

*The Apostles' Creed.*

And in one Lord Jesus Christ, the only-begotten Son of God, Begotten of his Father before all worlds, God of God, Light of Light, Very God of very God, Begotten, not made, Being of one substance with the Father, By Whom all things were made : Who for us men, and for our salvation came down from heaven, And was incarnate by the Holy Ghost of the Virgin Mary, And was made Man,

And in Jesus Christ his only Son our Lord, Who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, Born of the Virgin Mary,

## COMPARISON OF THE

*The Creed of St. Athanasius.*

One; not by conversion of the Godhead into flesh : but by taking of the Manhood into God ;

One altogether ; not by confusion of Substance : but by unity of Person.

For as the reasonable soul and flesh is one man : so God and Man is one Christ ;

Who suffered for our salvation :

Descended into hell,

Rose again the third day from the dead.

He ascended into heaven, He sitteth on the right hand of the Father, God Almighty :

From whence He shall come to judge the quick and the dead.

At whose coming all men shall rise again with their bodies : and shall give account for their own works.

And they that have done good shall go into life everlasting : and they that have done evil into everlasting fire.

This is the Catholick Faith : which except a man believe faithfully, he cannot be saved.

Glory be to the Father, and to the Son : and to the Holy Ghost ;

As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be : world without end. Amen.

CREEDS (continued).

*The Nicene Creed.*

And was crucified also for us under Pontius Pilate. He suffered and was buried,

And the third day He rose again according to the Scriptures,

And ascended into heaven, And sitteth on the right hand of the Father.

And He shall come again with glory to judge both the quick and the dead : Whose kingdom shall have no end.

And I believe in the Holy Ghost, The Lord, and Giver of life, Who proceedeth from the Father and the Son, Who with the Father and the Son together is worshipped and glorified, Who spake by the Prophets.

And I believe One Catholick and Apostolick Church.

I acknowledge one Baptism for the remission of sins,

And I look for the Resurrection of the dead,

And the Life of the world to come. Amen.

*The Apostles' Creed.*

Suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, dead, and buried,

He descended into hell ;

The third day He rose again from the dead,

He ascended into heaven, and sitteth at the right hand of God the Father Almighty ;

From thence He shall come to judge the quick and the dead.

I believe in the Holy Ghost ;

The Holy Catholick Church ;

The Communion of Saints ;  
The Forgiveness of sins ;

The Resurrection of the Body,

And the Life everlasting.  
Amen.

## IV. THE ARTICLES OF THE CHRISTIAN FAITH.

Of the articles of the Christian Faith we are now about to speak in detail, taking the Apostles' Creed as the ground-work.

## i. "I believe in God the Father Almighty."

1. *The Existence of God.*

Holy Scripture does not begin by proving God's existence; it takes it for granted. The existence of God is not a matter for mathematical demonstration. We cannot prove His existence with the same kind of certainty that we can prove that two and two make four. We do sums with our heads, but we believe in God with our hearts. "With the heart man believeth."<sup>1</sup> But if there is no such mathematical demonstration of God's existence, yet there are abundant proofs of another kind, which makes a moral certainty that He *is*.

We believe that the earth revolves on its axis once in every twenty four hours, for reasons which admit of no other conclusion. So almost everything points to God's existence: all Nature speaks of a Creator, and Preserver. Conscience tells of Him, for it points to an unseen Judge. Reason induces us to believe in Him, and then faith comes to our aid and confirms its conclusions. What is wanting in actual demonstration, faith supplies. Reason leads us on far in our search for Him, but the final step must be taken in faith; and when that step is taken, faith is assured, and becomes "a God-given certainty." "Without faith it

<sup>1</sup> Rom. x. 10.



is impossible to please Him : for he that cometh to God must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of them that diligently seek Him.”<sup>1</sup>

(a.) To believe in God is an instinct.

It is more natural to believe than to disbelieve in Him. The idea of God is born in man, and is common to all nations. The most degraded races believe in some divinity or other, however debased their idea may be. As Dr. Liddon says,—“ A nation of pure Atheists is yet to be discovered . . . . Man thinks of a Higher Power as naturally as he thinks of the world around him, or of himself . . . . That man should in all ages and everywhere thus think of Him, is of itself a presumption that He really exists.”<sup>2</sup>

The soul needs God, for it was made for Him ; or to use St. Augustine’s beautiful words,—“ Thou hast made us for Thyself, and our heart can find no rest until it rests in Thee.” It has been added,—“ If you would believe in God, look within ;” and the answer comes,—“ My God I believe in Thee, because I have a soul.”

(b.) A First Cause.

When we look out upon the universe, the question arises,—Whence came all this, Who made it ? There is but one answer,—Whatever secondary causes there may be in creation, yet behind all is the First Cause,—The Cause of Causes,—God. The question,—Which was first, the hen or the egg ? admits of but one reply,—Whichever was first, God made

<sup>1</sup> Heb. xi. 6.

<sup>2</sup> *Some Elements of Religion.* 3rd Edition, pp. 49, 50.

it. "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth."<sup>1</sup> On a Bedouin being asked,—How do you know there is a God? he replied,—In the same way that I know on looking at the sand, when a man or a beast has crossed the desert; by His footprints in the world around me; or as St. Paul puts it,—“The invisible things of Him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even His eternal power and Godhead.”<sup>2</sup>

There is in the Confessions of St. Augustine a beautiful passage which tells us how Nature leads up to God,—“I questioned the earth, and it said, ‘I am not He;’ and all that is in it confessed the same. I questioned the sea and the depths, and the creeping things which have life, and they replied, ‘We are not thy God, seek above us.’ I questioned the blowing winds, and the whole air with its inhabitants replied . . . ‘I am not God.’ I questioned the heavens, sun, moon, and stars; ‘Neither are we’ say they, ‘God Whom you seek.’ And I said to all those things which stand about the doors of my flesh, ‘Ye have told me of my God, that ye are not He; tell me now something of Him.’ And they cried out with a loud voice, ‘He made us.’”<sup>3</sup>

#### (c.) The Revelation of God.

Again, if God is, it is reasonable to suppose that He should reveal Himself to His creatures. He has done this, and that in various ways to Conscience and in Nature, as we have seen above,—in the moral and prophetic revelations recorded in the Scriptures,—to the Church, and

<sup>1</sup> Gen. i. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Rom. i. 20.

<sup>3</sup> *Confessions* x. 6.

still further and above all, by the Incarnation of His Son.

## *2. The Nature of God.*

“God is a Spirit;”<sup>1</sup> i.e. a Being possessing neither body nor bodily form; we cannot see God with our eyes, or touch Him with our hands. Although Holy Scripture speaks of the Face of God, of His Eyes, His Ear, His Arm, and so on, we are not to understand that He possesses these bodily members. Such expressions are only used because we have no language in which to describe the actions of a Spirit. We have no other way in which to convey any ideas of the actions of God.

## *3. The Perfections of God.*

### *(a.) God is Self-existent.*

We are creatures, and as such we are entirely dependent upon God. He is the Creator, and is completely independent of all created life. If the whole universe was brought to nought, He would remain unmoved; once, He was without creation, and that from all eternity. The name by which He made Himself known to His chosen people is Jehovah, which signifies “I Am that I Am,”<sup>2</sup> and which denotes the Self-Existence of God.

### *(b.) God is Eternal.*

He has neither beginning nor ending. With God there is neither past nor future, but an eternal present. HE IS. The circle is the emblem of eternity. In the centre of the circle of eternity is God. The grains of sand upon

<sup>1</sup> St. John iv. 24.

<sup>2</sup> Exod. iii. 14.

the sea shore are innumerable. If once in a hundred years a bird came and carried one grain away, at the end of the task we should be no nearer the beginning of the Life of God, for He has no beginning. "Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever the earth and the world were made, Thou art God from everlasting, and world without end."<sup>1</sup>

(c.) God is Holy.

The word 'God' is a shortened form of the word 'good.' God is the Good One. "There is none good but One, that is, God."<sup>2</sup> It is because He is good, that we are able to love and obey Him. We can only love and obey a perfect Being, and all evil is imperfection. The worship of the Angels "Holy, Holy, Holy, is the Lord of Hosts,"<sup>3</sup> is His right. The holiness of God is so excellent, that "His angels He charged with folly,"<sup>4</sup> and "the heavens are not clean in His sight."<sup>5</sup>

(d.) God is Almighty.

He can do all that He pleases, and that without effort. His will is supreme. "With God all things are possible."<sup>6</sup> Yet He cannot sin, otherwise He would not be perfect. Nothing, however trivial, happens independently of Him; not even a sparrow falls to the ground without Him.<sup>7</sup> God is so powerful that He can create worlds, and though His creatures have rebelled against Him, yet in the end "all things shall be subdued unto Him."<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xc. 2.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matt. xix. 17.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. vi. 3.

<sup>4</sup> Job iv. 18.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. xv. 15.

<sup>6</sup> St. Mark x. 27. St. Luke i. 37.

<sup>7</sup> St. Matt. x. 29.

<sup>8</sup> 1 Cor. xv. 28.

(e.) God is Omnipresent.

He is present everywhere, upholding, governing, and caring for all His creatures; seeing and knowing all things, past, present, and future. "He is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart; neither is there any creature that is not manifest in His sight: but all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of Him with Whom we have to do."<sup>1</sup>

Faith in God involves much more than the mere assent of the mind to His existence. It implies love, and devoted obedience, for loving obedience is the life of faith. "To believe in God is by believing to love Him, by believing to choose Him, by believing to go unto Him."

4. *The Mystery of the Holy Trinity.*

There is one God in Three Persons; the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. These Three Persons are co-equal in all things. "The Father is God, the Son is God, and the Holy Ghost is God, and yet they are not three Gods, but one God."<sup>2</sup> This is the doctrine of the Holy Trinity, taught by the Church, and proved by the Scriptures. Whilst the Holy Scriptures teach that there is but One God, they speak of each of the Three Persons as God, and thus prove to us their co-equal Godhead. The doctrine of the Trinity in Unity is a great mystery. A mystery is a truth revealed by God which we are therefore bound to believe, but which we are unable fully to understand. Though the doctrine of the Trinity is above the understanding, it is not contrary to it. It is reasonable that there should be mysteries in

<sup>1</sup> Heb. iv. 12, 13.

<sup>2</sup> Athanasian Creed.

religion, and above all that there should be mysteries about the Being of God. If we could grasp the doctrine of the Trinity, we should ourselves be God. The fly on the ceiling cannot understand the nature of man, because man is so much beyond a fly in the scale of creation. But there is less interval between a fly and a man, than there is between man and God, for man is a creature, and God is the infinite Creator.

It is said that on a certain occasion a preacher named Alanus, promised to make plain to his hearers on the next Sunday, the doctrine of the Trinity in Unity. Whilst considering the matter by the sea shore, he saw a child with a spoon in his hand walking to and fro between the sea and a hole which he had made in the sand. Alanus asked the child what he was doing. He replied,—“I am trying to empty the sea into this hole.” Alanus said,—“Why dost thou waste thy time in attempting an impossibility?” The child again replied,—“I am not more wasting my time than thou art, for thou wilt no sooner get all the knowledge of the Holy Trinity into thy small mind, than I shall empty the great sea into this hole in the sand.”<sup>1</sup>

Though a philosopher cannot explain the doctrine of the Trinity in Unity, a child can believe it. This great truth is not one about which we are to puzzle our minds. We are simply to believe it, because God has revealed it to the Church, and the Church teaches it. Reason becomes lost in wonder, and gives place to adoring faith.

<sup>1</sup> This story is generally related of St. Augustine, Bishop of Hippo.

"The Catholic Faith is this; that we WORSHIP one God in Trinity, and Trinity in Unity . . . In all things, as is aforesaid, the Unity in Trinity, and the Trinity in Unity is to be WORSHIPPED."

ii. "Maker of Heaven and Earth."

i. *The Creation of the Universe.*

If we only go back far enough, we come to a time when God alone existed. He had thus existed from all eternity. For endless ages God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost, was alone in eternal life, and in perfect happiness. Although All-Sufficient in Himself, God had none to bless, none to care for, none to rule, none to give him worship. How wonderful it is to think upon that eternity in which there was nothing but God alone! But it was not always to be thus; God was pleased to surround Himself with a beautiful creation. Almighty God only can create; for to create, is to bring forth out of nothing. It is not only to make things out of existing matter, but to make the very matter itself, and then to shape it. So the vast universe, of which our world is a very small part, came into being at the will of God. "Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear."<sup>\*</sup> The history of creation is given in the first chapter of Genesis, and is summed up in the oft-repeated words "And God said," . . . "And it was so."

<sup>\*</sup> Heb. xi. 3.

“He spake, and it was done, He commanded, and it stood fast.”<sup>1</sup>

In this work of creation the Three Persons of the Blessed Trinity co-operated. “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth, and the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.”<sup>2</sup> The Hebrew word here for “God” is plural. “God created all things by Jesus Christ.”<sup>3</sup> “By the Word of the Lord,” i.e. by the Son, “were the heavens made; and all the hosts of them by the Breath of His mouth,” i.e. by the Holy Spirit.<sup>4</sup>

In the first chapter of Genesis, creation is described as taking place in six days. We need not suppose that these were days of twenty-four hours long. The expression “day” in the Bible, is often used of more extended periods. By the six days of creation, we may understand six vast periods of creative power, in which our earth was being prepared by a progressive development from simpler to more perfect forms of existence, for the habitation of man. In briefly describing the work of creation, the account appears to dwell upon the leading feature of each period. Some have thought that the world, as we now see it, was created directly by God; others, that the higher forms and organisms with which we are familiar, were developed by Divine power out of the lower forms and organisms which God at first made. This latter idea is known as the theory of Evolution. If this should hereafter prove to be true, there is nothing in the account given in

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xxxiii. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. i. 1, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Eph. iii. 9.

<sup>4</sup> Ps. xxxiii. 6.



Genesis inconsistent with such a theory. If the theory of Evolution be true, it can only represent the *method* of God's working, He Who alone created all things, developing them by this law of growth.

Difficulties have been felt by some in reconciling the discoveries of science with the records of creation given in Genesis. Probably with the advance of knowledge these difficulties will disappear. Bishop Forbes has said,—“While the Christian starts with the determination ‘Let God be true, and every man a liar,’ he must not exact too much of the text of the Bible, or fancy that everything is to be made clear to him. If the Bible were to solve every difficulty in science, man would need omniscience to understand it, and language that would suit one state of advance in learning, would be totally unintelligible to an earlier stage.” . . . .  
“The devout Christian feels very certain, that God in revelation speaks the same language as God in nature.”<sup>1</sup>

There are three great divisions of Creation.

Beings purely spiritual.

Things purely material.

Beings partly spiritual, and partly material.

To the first of these divisions belong the angels, to the last belongs man.

“Thy Almighty hand, which is always one and the same, created angels in heaven and worms upon earth; not higher in those, not lower in these. For as no other hand could make an angel, so neither could any other make a worm: as none else could create Heaven, so neither could anyone else create the least leaf

<sup>1</sup> *Explanation of the Nicene Creed.* 2nd Ed. pp. 101, 103.

upon the tree; as none else could make a body, so neither can anyone else make an hair black or white; but only Thine Almighty hand, to which all things are alike possible. For it is not more possible to Him to create a worm than an angel, nor more impossible to stretch out the heavens than a leaf.”<sup>1</sup>

## 2. *The Creation of the Angels.*

The highest beings in the scale of creation are the angels. Their existence and work in the universe is abundantly testified by Holy Scripture, and the teaching of the Church. The angels are spiritual beings, created certainly before man, if not before matter. The word “angel” means “messenger,” but this was not their first name, for at their creation there were none, as far as we know, to whom they could act as messengers. Their first name was “sons of God,” and under this title they are described as wondering spectators of the creation of the world.<sup>2</sup> In the epistle to the Hebrews,<sup>3</sup> they are spoken of as “ministering spirits (literally, ‘*spirits of worship*’) sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation.” From this passage we learn that their work consists in the worship of God, and in the service of men. The angels are moral agents, that is to say, they possess freewill, and are able to choose between good and evil.

There are intimations in Holy Scripture of various orders or ranks in the angelic hosts.

<sup>1</sup> St. Aug. *Solil.* 9, quoted by Bp. Forbes, *Nicene Creed*, p. 104.

<sup>2</sup> Job xxxviii. 7.

<sup>3</sup> i. 14.

These are generally supposed to be nine in number, and are thus named:—

1. SERAPHIM.	Isaiah vi. 2, 6.
2. CHERUBIM.	Gen. iii. 24. Ps. xviii.
3. THRONES.	} [10.
4. DOMINIONS.	
5. PRINCIPALITIES.	
6. POWERS.	
7. VIRTUES.	} Eph. i. 21. Col. i. 16.
8. ARCHANGELS.	
9. ANGELS.	
	1 Thess. iv. 16. Jude 9.
	Heb. i. 14. 1 St. Pet.
	[iii. 22.

### 3. *The Fall of the Angels.*

The angels were created in a state of sanctity, but under probation. In the distant past they were put on their trial. As to the means adopted for this ordeal we know nothing with certainty; but the Church has generally held that their temptation was to pride. Under the trial, a number of the angels fell; they were thrust out of heaven, and became fallen angels or devils. These fallen spirits St. Jude<sup>1</sup> describes as "the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation." At the head of this rebel host is Satan, thought to have been one of the Cherubim, or spirits of knowledge, owning the name of Lucifer, the light-bearer. Of his fall our Blessed Lord speaks in the words, "I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven."<sup>2</sup> The fall of the devils was without remedy; may be, they had sinned deliberately, with full knowledge of what they were doing,

<sup>1</sup> Verse 6.

<sup>2</sup> St. Luke x. 18.

and of the consequences of their sin. When the new race of mankind appeared on the earth, the fallen angels became their tempters and enemies. It seems probable that the human race was created by God to take, after due trial, the vacant place in heaven, once occupied by the fallen angels. If this be so, the root of their ill-will towards mankind is jealousy.

When the Son of God was made Man, one great purpose of His coming was to free mankind from the power of the demons. "For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil."<sup>1</sup> That the devil and his angels will in the end be cast out for ever, is the doom which the Scriptures reveal.

#### 4. *The Creation of Man.*

In the creation of our world, we see a gradual progress from lower to higher forms of life. It was upon the sixth day that creation was crowned by the appearance of the human race. We read, "And God said, let Us make man in our image, after our likeness. . . . So God created man in His own image, in the image of God created He him; male and female created He them."<sup>2</sup> We have referred before to the co-operation of the Three Persons of the ever Blessed Trinity in creation. In the use of the term "Us" in this passage, we learn that the Blessed Trinity conferred together concerning the creation of man. This conference marks man's special dignity, for there is no record of such an action on the part of God in calling the lower creatures into being.

Man was made in the image and likeness of

<sup>1</sup> I St. John iii. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. i. 26, 27.

God. We may understand this image of God to be in the threefold structure of the soul, the memory, the understanding and the will. The image of God, which includes these three great powers of the soul, is the natural preparation for His likeness which is supernatural, or above nature. This image can never be effaced however marred; it remained stamped upon the soul after the fall. We are all born in the image of God. The likeness of God is man's correspondence with His will, and depends upon the right use of the gift of grace. A soul in grace bears the likeness of God; the higher the state of grace, the closer the likeness. The likeness was well nigh, if not altogether, lost at the fall.

In creating man, God formed a being capable of knowing, serving, and loving Him. To do these things is the end of man. That this purpose might be intelligently fulfilled, He gave man, like the angels, moral freedom.

### 5. *The Fall of Man.*

Man was put on his trial in the garden of Eden. To test him, God forbade his eating of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. The devil came and tempted man to disobey. He yielded and so fell away from God.<sup>1</sup> The act implies much more than at first sight appears, for it was the deliberate sin of a being created in a state of grace, and possessed with full knowledge and clear light.

By his sin, man lost that likeness of God in which he had been created, and his whole moral being fell into disorder. The nature thus disordered he passed on to all his successors. It

<sup>1</sup> Gen. ii. and iii.

is true of every child born after the fall,—“Behold, I was shapen in wickedness; and in sin hath my mother conceived me.”<sup>1</sup> All people to be born in the future were “in Adam” when he fell, and they too fell in him. Adam lost the guiding light of God’s likeness, and this defect he handed down to his posterity.

This is Original or Birth sin, the sin of our origin, or birth. It is more of the nature of a serious defect than of a positive taint, and hence it is the object of God’s compassion, rather than of His wrath.

The fall was the occasion of the promise of the Deliverer, “the Seed of the woman,” the Incarnate God Himself, Who should, in due time, bruise the serpent’s head.<sup>2</sup> At the cost of a vast personal sacrifice, God has made recovery from the fall possible. Of this great restoration, we shall learn more when we come to speak of the Incarnation, and its extension in the Sacraments.

There is still within each of us a bias towards evil, and sad experience teaches that in our natural state it is easier to do wrong than right, or as St. Paul says,—“When I would do good, evil is present with me.”<sup>3</sup> This is the proof that we are a fallen race. It is the work of grace to rectify our natural tendency to evil, and by degrees to give us the love of right, and the power to do it.

## 6. *The Origin of Evil.*

The Fall of Man is connected with a dark and mysterious subject,—the origin of evil. Whence came evil, and why is it permitted?

<sup>1</sup> Ps. li. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. iii. 15.

<sup>3</sup> Rom. vii. 21.

This is an old question which is ever new. That evil is here in various forms, and that too by permission of God Who is perfectly good and just, is an evident fact. We have experience of moral evil within our hearts, and we see its shadow in the pain, and sorrow, and death in the world around. What account can we give of its presence? We will answer the question in the words of the great St. Augustine,—“Evil . . . is not any substance; for were it a substance, it would be good. . . . Thou didst make all things good, nor is there any substance that was not made by Thee. . . . I enquired what iniquity was, and found it not to be a substance, but a perversion of the will, bent aside from Thee, O God.”<sup>1</sup> St. Augustine here gives the true account of the origin of evil. Evil comes from the misuse of freewill in beings who were originally created good. The perverted freedom of the will of the creature, this it was which gave evil its birth.

In creating the universe, God might, had it pleased Him, have refrained from giving existence to responsible creatures. He might have made nothing higher in the scale of created life than the animals now subject to man, giving the whole universe “a law which shall not be broken.” But God desired something greater than such a constrained service as this. He desired a free obedience, and a willing love, which nothing thus made, could have given Him. In His desire to receive such an unforced obedience and generous love, He created angels and men, endowing them with a gift which He bestowed upon no other of His creatures. This gift is that of moral freedom, or

<sup>1</sup> *St. Augustine's Confessions.* Bk. VII., chap. 12 and 16.

freewill. Angels and men alone of all creatures can say, "We need not do this or that unless we choose."

But if the will is to be really free, it must be capable of choosing evil as well as good. If there was no evil to reject, goodness would be unavoidable. We could not help being good, if there was no chance of being wicked. And is it not easy to see that such goodness as this would be of no value, and unworthy of the name of goodness? Goodness is worthless unless freely chosen in the face of possible evil. If we realise all this, it is not difficult to see how the power to choose God and goodness, carries with it of necessity the awful power to reject both Him and it. The possession of a freewill implies the possible choice of evil as well as good. Hence, as far as we can see, the possibility of doing evil is an unavoidable condition of our trial here on earth.

In the case of man, the temptation to do wrong came from without. Man was tempted by the chief of the fallen angels. Thus, as far as our earth is concerned, evil came from the devil. Bishop Forbes, in summing up the question we are considering says,—“The Catholic Christian, enlightened by the Spirit, and overcome by a sense of his own feebleness of intellect, traces up the origin of evil to the fall of the angels, and leaves it there.”<sup>1</sup> He believes evil to be no part of God’s original creation, which was pronounced by God Himself to be very good. “And God saw everything that He had made, and, behold, it was very good.”<sup>2</sup> He believes that evil entered this world from without, and so will be cast out again at last.

<sup>1</sup> *Nicene Creed*, p. 30.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. i. 13.





*The Incarnation.*



"WHEN THE FULNESS OF THE TIME WAS COME, GOD  
SENT FORTH HIS SON, MADE OF A WOMAN."—*Gal. iv. 4.*

iii. "I believe in Jesus Christ His only Son our Lord, Who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin Mary."

i. *The Doctrine of the Incarnation.*

We are now to consider the mystery of the Incarnation. The Nicene Creed states the doctrine of the Divine Nature of Jesus Christ, and His Incarnation, with a greater fulness than the Apostles' Creed. The words are,—“I BELIEVE IN ONE LORD JESUS CHRIST, THE ONLY BEGOTTEN SON OF GOD, BEGOTTEN OF HIS FATHER BEFORE ALL WORLDS, GOD OF GOD, LIGHT OF LIGHT, VERY GOD OF VERY GOD, BEGOTTEN, NOT MADE, BEING OF ONE SUBSTANCE WITH THE FATHER, BY WHOM ALL THINGS WERE MADE: WHO FOR US MEN, AND FOR OUR SALVATION CAME DOWN FROM HEAVEN, AND WAS INCARNATE BY THE HOLY GHOST OF THE VIRGIN MARY, AND WAS MADE MAN.”

The word *of* in the expressions “God of God, Light of Light, Very God of Very God,” signifies *out of*, or *from*. It implies the eternal generation of the Son from the Father. In reciting the Nicene Creed, a slight stress should be laid upon the word to give the proper meaning. St. Hippolytus says,—“When I say that the Son is distinct from the Father, I do not speak of two Gods, but as it were, light from light, and the stream from the fountain, and the ray from the sun.”

The word *incarnation* signifies *the taking of flesh*, and gives a brief summary of the doctrine stated in the first chapter of the Gospel according to St. John, “The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us.”<sup>1</sup> It is most important

<sup>1</sup> i. i. 14.

that the Christian should be well instructed in the doctrine of the Incarnation, for the whole scheme of redemption circles round this great foundation truth of our religion. We shall not give God the loving gratitude which is His due, nor will our hope of salvation rest secure, until we have grasped the truth concerning the Person and office of the Saviour. On these accounts the Athanasian Creed, after stating the doctrine of the Trinity, declares,—“Furthermore, it is necessary to everlasting salvation: that we also believe rightly the Incarnation of our Lord Jesus Christ.”

What is the right faith concerning the Incarnation? It is this;—The Second Person of the ever Blessed Trinity, God the Son, out of love to mankind, took man's nature in the womb of the Blessed Virgin Mary of her substance. This was accomplished by a miracle, for the Blessed Mother was a Virgin both before, and after His Birth. Jesus was conceived by the direct action of God the Holy Ghost, Who overshadowed the Blessed Virgin Mary, the agency of a human father being thus superseded. Jesus Christ alone, of all the human race, was born of ONE human parent. By this miraculous conception, He escaped the defects of original sin, and was born Perfect Man. The Virgin-Birth is the guarantee that no entail of birth-sin was passed on to Him.

By this amazing act of condescension, He did not cease to be perfect God, but He added a pure human nature to His Divine Nature. THUS, OUR LORD POSSESSES TWO NATURES, THE NATURE OF GOD, AND THE NATURE OF MAN; AND THESE TWO NATURES ARE UNITED IN HIS ONE DIVINE PERSON, WHOLE AND WITHOUT

CONFUSION, AND THAT FOR ALL ETERNITY. The life, and the power, and the influence of the Godhead was in all that Christ said and did. His words and actions as Man, being the words and actions of God, were effectual to the redemption of mankind.

## *2. The Purpose of the Incarnation.*

Why was God made man? Was it simply to save fallen man from sin, and from the punishment of sin; or were there other purposes behind this? If there had been no sin, would He still have come?

We may reply, that although it has not been clearly revealed, yet there are weighty reasons for believing that God's purpose of becoming Man was prior to, and independent of, the fall. We must admit that the Incarnation is the greatest honour and blessing our race has received, or ever can receive. Human nature thereby was taken into closest union with God, and that for all eternity. It is difficult to believe that this honour depended upon sin, so that if there had been no sin, it would not have been granted. It is difficult to believe that we are better off as sinners, than we should have been if not fallen.

Assuming that the Eternal Son would have come as Man if there had been no fall, what, in this view, is the purpose of the Incarnation? It is that the whole creation may be united to the Creator, God choosing man's nature for this end, since man is the representative of creation. As a being partly spiritual and partly material, man is akin to the angels, and also to the animals, and lifeless matter. There are

many hints in the New Testament that this is the true view of the purpose of the Incarnation.<sup>1</sup>

But if this view be correct, how is it that there are so few and such remote references to it in the Bible? We reply that the Bible, with the exception of the first chapter of Genesis, is the record of the history of fallen man, and of his restoration from a fallen state, and therefore it is occupied with the remedy which the fall rendered necessary. It views things as they are, rather than as they might have been under other circumstances.

But if the Incarnation would have taken place irrespective of sin, we cannot say the same of our Lord's sufferings and Death. These were the result of sin. Viewing the Incarnation apart from the fall, it is a matter for adoring gratitude that when sin entered into the world, God was not turned aside from His purpose of uniting creation to Himself; even though the fall rendered His bitter Death and Passion a necessity to our pardon and restoration. This view exalts the Incarnation as an exhibition of a love which not even man's sinful rebellion could quench, though involving the Incarnate God in the added humiliation of suffering as the fruit of our sins.

### 3. *The Blessed Virgin Mary.*

In the Incarnation of the Son of God, there were two agents,—the one Divine, the other human. The Divine Agent was God the Holy

<sup>1</sup> See Rom. viii. 29. Eph. i. 10, 22. Col. i. 15, etc.; ii. 10. Heb. ii. 10.

**Ghost:** the human agent was the Blessed Virgin Mary.

The Blessed Virgin is said to have been the child of Jewish parents named Joachim and Anne. Of her birth and early life, Holy Scripture and history are alike silent. That from the first moment of her conception in the womb, she was preserved free from original sin, rests on no sufficient authority. To believe that she was conceived free from the defects of birth sin, is to rob our Incarnate Lord of His special glory, His being the only sinless conception. Surely, it deepens our sense of His amazing humility to know that He did not abhor the womb of one who was heir to Adam's defects, coming in "the likeness of sinful flesh." His birth was pre-eminently miraculous, for He alone was born of the woman *only*, the agency of human father being superseded by the overshadowing of the Holy Ghost; and by this twofold provision He alone was sinlessly conceived.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, to attribute a sinless conception to St. Anne, robs the Blessed Virgin Mary of her singular honour as the only mother who gave a sinless birth to her offspring.

But we may reverently believe that with a view to her future destiny as the Mother of the Lord, she was, like the Prophet Jeremiah,<sup>2</sup> and the Baptist,<sup>3</sup> specially sanctified from the womb, and lived a life of spotless innocence. How could she otherwise have been fitted for her high and mysterious office as the Mother of the Incarnate God?

<sup>1</sup> St. John Damascene says,—“The Holy Spirit came upon the Virgin purging her, i.e. preserving her lest she should conceive in original sin.”

<sup>2</sup> Jer. i. 5.

<sup>3</sup> St. Luke i. 15.

It was to the pure maiden of Nazareth, thus chosen and prepared by God, that the angel Gabriel came, bearing the offer from God of an honour so amazing, that compared with it, every earthly honour is as nothing. The angel's message was nothing less than that Almighty God would, with her consent, take human form in her womb. "Hail! thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women. . . . Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a Son, and shalt call His name Jesus. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest."<sup>1</sup>

Then arose in Mary's mind the wondering question, how could she, a virgin, bear a child? Had ever a maiden become mother without the agency of human father? "Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?"<sup>2</sup> There is no doubting in her question; Mary believes that it will be as the angel said and only enquires how it will be accomplished.

It was then that Gabriel announced to Mary that the agency of the human father would be superseded, and that, through the power of God, a virgin-birth would be accomplished. He assured her that in conceiving and bringing forth her Child, her virgin-chastity would remain, that she would still be a virgin.<sup>3</sup> He

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke i. 28, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 34.

<sup>3</sup> The Church has ever held that the Mother of Jesus was a virgin both before and after the birth of Jesus. St. Augustine speaks of her as, "a virgin conceiving, a virgin bringing forth, a virgin dying." The title "Ever-Virgin" is applied to her by St. Athanasius. The words "And knew her not till she had brought forth her first-born son" (St.



*The Annunciation of the Blessed  
Virgin Mary.*



“Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the  
Lord is with thee : Blessed art thou among  
women.”—*St. Luke i. 28.*

taught her that she should fulfil the mother's part, God the Holy Ghost quickening the powers of nature. "And the angel answered and said unto her, the Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that Holy Thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God." \*

But even yet the Incarnation was not accomplished; there wanted the consent of Mary to be the agent in its fulfilment.

Let us pause to consider what this announcement involved to Mary. She must have seen, by a pure womanly instinct, that there lay before her a time of keenest trial, of suspicion and agonizing doubt. If she accepted her amazing destiny, would not the finger of reproach be pointed at her as the Holy Child grew in her womb? How could she explain her condition even to those nearest and dearest to her? How terrible must the facing of all this have been to one, whose soul was as pure as the driven snow? What would Joseph, to Matt. i. 25), do not imply that she ceased to be a virgin after the birth of Jesus, or that there were other children born later. They are intended simply to make it quite plain that Joseph was not the father of Mary's Child. They guard Mary's virginity up to the time of the birth of her first and only Son. The term "firstborn" does not imply a second born. There were amongst the Jews, certain rites performed in reference to the first son born into a family; and thus he was called "the firstborn" whether there were other children or not (see Ex. xiii. 2, St. Luke ii. 22, 23). "The brethren of our Lord" alluded to in the Gospels, were not the children of the Virgin Mother. They are generally supposed to have been either children of Joseph by a previous marriage, or to have been the cousins of our Lord. Bishop Lightfoot, after a most careful study of the question, comes to the conclusion that they were the former.

\* St. Luke i. 35.

whom she was about to be married, think of her? What he *did* think we know; for we are told at first "he was minded to put her away privily," to hide her from the shame which he began to think she had brought upon herself. Only a voice from heaven reassured him, and relieved him from the painful suspicion. Beyond all this, there was the thought of the strangely mysterious association with Almighty God and His deep purposes, and all it would cost her to maintain such a dignity, which must have tempted the Blessed Virgin to hesitate in accepting the Divine call. "What might not she have to be, to do, to endure, to surrender, to look forward to, who in a moment learned in the depth of her obscurity that she had been chosen and was called out of all mankind to be the mother of the 'Son of the Highest,' the 'Son of God,' the 'Christ.'"<sup>1</sup>

It was a tremendous crisis in the history of the world, a crisis in which the salvation of mankind, for a time at least, lay trembling in the balance. Would God be suffered to become incarnate for us men and for our salvation, or would His merciful design, for a season at least, be thwarted?

The decision lay with Mary, and we may well thank God that it was the right decision. In the face of all that awaited her, by the grace of God, the Blessed Virgin accepted with complete self-surrender the wondrous call of God, and uttered the eventful words,—  
"Behold the handmaid of the Lord: be it unto

<sup>1</sup> Dean Church's *Human Life and its Conditions*, 2nd Edition, p. 173.

me according to Thy Word.”<sup>x</sup> In that central moment, the everlasting Son of the Father, Who took upon him to deliver man, did not abhor the Virgin’s womb. He began to take human form, and Mary became the Mother of God.<sup>2</sup> Well may we make the words of one of our English bishops, the pious and affectionate Bishop Hall our own,—“But how gladly do we second the Angel in the praise of her, which was more ours than his! How justly do we bless her, whom the Angel pronounced blessed. How worthily is she honoured of men, whom the Angel proclaimed beloved of God! O Blessed Mary, he cannot bless thee, he cannot honour thee too much, that deifies thee not! That which the Angel said of thee, thou hast prophesied of thyself; we believe the Angel and thee: ‘All generations shall call thee blessed,’ by the Fruit of whose womb all generations are blessed.”

<sup>x</sup> St. Luke i. 38.

<sup>2</sup> The title “Mother of God” was solemnly bestowed upon the Blessed Virgin Mary at the General Council of Ephesus held in the year 431. This Council met to condemn the heresy of Nestorius, who taught that in Christ were two Persons, the Person of God and the person of man; the Person of God being, as he said, united some time after birth to the person of man. The Catholic Faith is, that there is but one Person in Christ, that of God; and that this Divine Person took the Manhood into God in the womb of the Blessed Virgin Mary. Thus the title ‘Mother of God,’ was given to safeguard the truth of the Incarnation, and not with a view to her special honour. In speaking of her as “the Mother of God,” it is not meant that she was the Mother of the Divine Nature, but of the Human Nature of Him who is God, and Who took of her that Human Nature.

Canon Bright writes,—“The theological importance of the title consists in this, that it is a condensed expression of the *personal Divinity* of the Redeemer.”

4. *The Earthly Life of Our Lord.*

Of the miraculous conception of our Blessed Lord, we have already spoken. In the womb of the Blessed Virgin Mary the Godhead was mysteriously united to the manhood, by the operation of the Holy Ghost. The Incarnation dates from the time that the angel Gabriel announced the tidings to the Blessed Virgin Mary at Nazareth. This event is known as the Annunciation, and is commemorated in the Church on Lady Day. We have also a daily memorial of the Annunciation in the Song of the Blessed Virgin Mary, "My soul doth magnify the Lord," sung at Evensong. This Psalm was uttered by the Blessed Virgin upon her visit to St. Elizabeth, after the angel had made known to her that she should be the Mother of the Lord. Nine months later, our Lord was born at Bethlehem, the city of David, to which place the Virgin Mother had resorted with St. Joseph, to be enrolled in the census ordered by the Roman Emperor. Many years before, the prophet Micah had foretold that our Lord should be born in that city.\*

The entrance of the Son of God into the world in human form was an event of unspeakable importance. It was an event well known in heaven, for it is recorded, that the mystery of the Incarnation was revealed to the angel-hosts for their acceptance. "When He bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, He saith, And let all the angels of God worship Him."<sup>2</sup> But if well known in heaven, it was unknown on earth, save to St. Mary and St. Joseph, and to certain shepherds to whom the

\* V. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Heb. i. 6.

*The Nativity.*



“Unto you is born this day in the City of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.”—*S. Luke ii. 11.*

angels announced the tidings,—“for unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, Which is Christ the Lord.”<sup>1</sup> The shepherds, thus warned, hastened to Bethlehem, and there found the Divine Child with His Mother in a cave or stable, in which, from the crowded state of the Inn, they had been obliged to seek shelter. On the eighth day after birth, our Blessed Lord was circumcised, and received His Name of JESUS, which means “God the Saviour.” Thirty-two days later, He, with His Blessed Mother, further complied with the Jewish Law. Jesus was presented in the Temple, and the Blessed Virgin was purified after childbirth, though the conception of her Divine Child by the Holy Ghost, without human father, rendered such a ceremony needless. It was on this occasion that an aged servant of God, named Simeon, took our Blessed Lord in his arms, and uttered the touching “Nunc Dimittis,” “Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace,” which we sing in our daily Evensong. These two events are celebrated in the Church on January 1, and on February 2, eight days, and forty days respectively from Christmas Day.

The next recorded event in our Lord's life was the visit of certain wise men from the far East. These wise men, or Magi as they are called, were probably astrologers. Their attention was drawn to a star of unusual appearance in the heavens, and Divinely taught, they resolved to follow its course. The star led them to Bethlehem, and rested over the very house in which the Holy Child was. Entering in, they offered their homage to the Newborn

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke ii. 11.

## *The Worship of the Magi.*



“When they had opened their treasures, they presented unto Him gifts; gold, and frankincense, and myrrh.”—*St. Matt. ii. 11.*



King, and opening their treasures they presented gifts of gold, frankincense and myrrh. The object of their visit was made known to Herod the King, who, regarding our Lord as a rival come to dethrone him, determined to put Him out of the way. To this end, Herod cruelly ordered all the male children of the age of two years and under in Bethlehem and the district to be put to death. The massacre of these children is regarded by the Church as martyrdom for Christ's sake, and is commemorated yearly three days after Christmas Day;—the feast of the Holy Innocents. Herod's intention to kill our Lord was frustrated, for the angel of God warned St. Joseph to flee with the Holy Child and His Mother into Egypt, commanding him to remain there with his sacred charge until the death of Herod. When Herod was dead, the Holy Family returned from Egypt and dwelt at Nazareth, the home of the Blessed Virgin Mary. Thus was fulfilled the prophecy of Hosea "Out of Egypt have I called my Son."<sup>\*</sup>

There now follows a period of some years, during which with the exception of one event, we have no particulars of our Lord's earthly life. Of this event we must speak. It was the custom for Jewish boys on reaching the age of twelve years to be admitted to the full privileges of the Jewish Church. At this age our Blessed Lord was taken by His parents to Jerusalem. It was the occasion of the yearly Passover, and large companies of pilgrims went up to the feast. Amongst the bustle and excitement of the Holy City, the Divine Child was lost amongst the crowd. After a three days' anxious

<sup>\*</sup> xi. 1.

*The Holy Family.*



“He went down with them, and came to Nazareth,<sup>o</sup> and was subject unto them.”

*St. Luke ii. 51.*

search, He was discovered in the Temple, whither He had resorted. The Jewish doctors, or teachers of the Law, held their schools in the courts of the Temple, and in one of these schools Jesus was found. On the Blessed Mother gently chiding Her Son, He replied,—“Wist ye not that I must be about My Father’s business.”<sup>1</sup> This, the first recorded utterance of our Incarnate Lord, reveals the great aim of His earthly life. From this time to the commencement of His ministry, a period of eighteen years, He lived a hidden life at Nazareth, being subject to His parents, and labouring as a carpenter under the direction of St. Joseph, His foster-father. The hiddenness of Our Blessed Lord’s life, and the patient waiting for the commencement of His public ministry, are suggestive of great lessons.

When Jesus reached the age of thirty years, He came forth from His retirement; this was the legal age at which, in the beginning, the Levites of the Jewish Church commenced their public service. His first step was to seek baptism at the hands of St. John the Baptist, His kinsman, whose wonderful birth had taken place a few months before His own. Descending into the bed of the river Jordan, He received a baptism which was attended with miraculous circumstances; the heavens were opened, and the Holy Spirit, in the form of a dove, lighted upon Him, whilst the Eternal Father proclaimed Him to be His beloved Son, in whom He was well pleased; thus the Three Persons of the Blessed Trinity were manifested.<sup>2</sup> Thus was Jesus revealed as the Christ, the Anointed One; anointed by the Holy

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke ii. 49.<sup>2</sup> St. Matt. iii. 13 to end.

Spirit to be the Prophet, Priest, and King of His people. This Baptism formed our Blessed Lord's inauguration to His public ministry.

Immediately following this event, came the Temptation of Jesus, a transaction veiled in deepest mystery. He retired to the solitude of the wilderness, where He remained without food for forty days : at the close of this period, in His weakened state, Satan drew nigh to assail Him with a threefold temptation. From this personal conflict with the Evil One, Jesus came forth pure and sinless ; Satan being vanquished, but only to renew his attack in the dark hours of the Passion.

Our Blessed Lord now began His active ministry. He announced that the kingdom of heaven was at hand, and that He had come to found it. From the crowd of disciples whom He drew around Him, He selected, after a night of prayer, twelve men whom He named Apostles. These He trained to become the first ministers of His Church, and, as time went on, gave them the solemn commission and the authority to act as His witnesses, and the instruments for the salvation of the world. Our Lord's ministry lasted three years, and during its course He journeyed through the land of Palestine, preaching the Gospel, teaching the people, working miracles of healing, and attracting souls to Himself day by day. Thus every step of His way was marked by deeds of wondrous love and tenderest mercy. As Mr. Keble so beautifully says ;—"All His time, from His Baptism to His Crucifixion, was entirely spent in waiting on those who needed Him, either for their sorrows or for their sins." His work stirred the envy of the chief priests,

the Scribes and the Pharisees, who composed the religious world of the day; and they did not rest until they had silenced Him, as they thought, by the death of the Cross.

Shortly before his last journey to Jerusalem, Jesus permitted Peter, James, and John, three of His Apostles, to witness His Transfiguration. Ascending a mountain, the Divine glory burst forth from Him, and Moses and Elijah, the two chiefest prophets of the Old Law, spake with Him of His coming death and sufferings, whilst the Eternal Father again testified with audible voice,—“This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.” Thus by His earthly career Jesus Christ proved that He was the Incarnate Son of God, in fulfilling prophecies, in working miracles, and in giving in His doctrine and in His life the rule and model of all virtues.

#### *5. The Passion of Our Lord.*

“Suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, dead, and buried.”

The mystery of the Redemption specially demands our reverent attention. By this we understand the sufferings and the death of our Blessed Lord, whereby He redeemed the world.

That the Saviour was to suffer when He came, had been foretold from the beginning. The first sin of man drew from God the merciful promise of the Deliverer, “the seed of the woman.” It was promised that He should come to “bruise the serpent’s head,” i.e. to destroy the power of Satan; but it was added, that in so doing the serpent should “bruise his heel;” i.e. inflict suffering upon Him in His

*The Man of Sorrows.*



“Behold, and see if there be any sorrow  
like unto My sorrow.”—*Lam. i. 12.*

Humanity.<sup>1</sup> As time went on, this truth was taught again and again both by word and deed,—by type and prophecy. The system of the Mosaic sacrifices taught the solemn lesson that without the shedding of blood, which is *the life*, there is no remission of sins;<sup>2</sup> and pointed to the shedding of the Precious Blood of the Lamb of God Who should take away the sins of the world. The prophets, notably Isaiah, foretold that Christ should suffer and die for His people.<sup>3</sup>

We have seen that it is probable that the Son of God would have been incarnate if there had been no sin for which to atone, but the sufferings of our Lord are clearly traceable to the sin of man. Suffering is the shadow and the penalty of sin. Thus when we see our Lord suffering, we know that, in some mysterious way, He is in contact with sin, and suffering because of sin. He was perfectly sinless, “holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners,”<sup>4</sup> but as the representative of our guilty race, He allowed Himself to be accounted guilty, and in surrendering life in such agonies, He bore the punishment due to our sins. In the striking language of St. Paul, God “made Him to be sin for us, Who knew no sin.”<sup>5</sup> Thus Jesus was the Sin-Bearer, bearing “our sins in His own body on the tree.”<sup>6</sup> The prophet Isaiah specially declared that “the Lord hath laid on Him the iniquity of us all.”<sup>7</sup>

This great prophecy found its first fulfilment

<sup>1</sup> Gen. iii. 15.                      <sup>2</sup> Lev. xvii. 11.    Heb. ix. 22.

<sup>3</sup> St. Luke xxiv. 25-27.    <sup>4</sup> Heb. vii. 26.

<sup>5</sup> 2 Cor. v. 21.                      <sup>6</sup> 1 St. Peter ii. 24.    <sup>7</sup> Isa. liii. 6.

in our Blessed Lord's agony and bloody sweat in the Garden of Gethsemane, the night in which he was betrayed. At the close of this terrible conflict, Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve Apostles, betrayed his Master to His enemies for thirty pieces of silver. Deserted by the Apostles, Jesus was taken away, and, on the next day, was led before His judges, scourged, crowned with thorns, and after enduring unspeakable insults and indignities, was sentenced by Pontius Pilate, the Roman governor, and nailed to a cross upon which He died. All this happened upon the first Good Friday.

The Crucifixion of Jesus is the most terrible crime which it is possible to conceive, for the Crucified was none other than God the Son, the Second Person in the Blessed Trinity, the Creator and the Judge of all men.

Our Blessed Saviour was nailed to the cross at nine o'clock in the morning; at twelve o'clock a mysterious darkness fell upon the face of nature which lasted until three o'clock, when He died. During the six hours He hung upon the cross, He uttered seven sayings, known as the Seven Words from the cross;—

1. Jesus prayed for His murderers in the words,—“Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do.”

2. He pardoned the penitent thief who was crucified with Him, saying,—“To-day shalt thou be with me in paradise.”

3. He commended His Blessed Mother to the care of the Apostle St. John,—“Woman, behold thy son!” . . . “Behold thy mother!”

4. Forsaken by God, He uttered the awful



*The Crucifixion.*



"GOD SO LOVED THE WORLD."

cry, "My God, My God, why hast Thou forsaken me?"

5. He said "I thirst."

6. He spoke of the completion of His redemptive work saying,—“It is finished.”

7. In the moment of death, He yielded up His Soul into His Father's keeping with the words,—“Father, into Thy hands I commend my spirit.”

The death of Jesus was the parting of His Soul from His Body, but neither Soul nor Body, thus sundered, were for one moment separated from His Godhead. His death was not of necessity as in our case, but by His own will.

By His Cross and Passion our Incarnate Lord redeemed us from the power of Satan, from sin, and from the punishment of sin. He did this as God and Man in one Person. As Man, He suffered death for us; as God, He gave an infinite value to His sufferings and death. We must not regard the Redemption as the offering of so much pain for so much sin. It is not so much the *painfulness* of our Lord's sufferings which give them their value, as the *obedience* of which they were the evidence. As St. Bernard says "It was not His death, but His freely dying, which was pleasing to God." The sufferings and death of Jesus were the witness to His perfect obedience to the will of God. He satisfied to the full the righteous demands of God on the obedience of man. His obedience knew no limits, for He "became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross." \* We cannot conceive of obedience going beyond such an offering.

\* Phil. ii. 8.

We should always think of this perfect obedience of our Incarnate Lord, as the great cause of our redemption. In this wondrous act of God's love, we should regard our Lord not merely as our *substitute*, though He was also this, but as our *representative*. As the human race fell in Adam, so it was restored in Christ, the second Adam, the Son of Man, the Representative Man. And as the human race fell from God through disobedience, so it could only be restored by obedience. This obedience to the will of God, Jesus rendered all through life; but it reached its highest perfection in His Death and Passion. Our Lord revealed the habit of His life when He said,—“My meat is to do the will of Him that sent me,” and, “I do always those things that please Him.”<sup>1</sup>

The Cross and Passion of our Lord is the medium of a great revelation: it reveals,—

- i. *The malice and deadly impiety of sin*; shewing what all sin leads to, and what alone can expiate it,—the death of Christ, the Son of God.
- ii. *God's hatred of sin*; teaching that God's attitude towards sin is one of detestation and wrath. If He undergoes such shame and pain to destroy sin, how He must hate sin!
- iii. *God's love to sinners*; if He wills to die to save sinners, how He must love sinners!

“O Love of God! O sin of man!  
In this dread act your strength is tried;  
And victory remains with love;  
For He, our Love, is crucified!”

F. W. FABER.

<sup>1</sup> St. John iv. 34; viii. 29.

6. *The Descent into Hell.*

## “He Descended into Hell.”

At three o'clock on Good Friday our Blessed Saviour died on the cross, and from this time until the morning of Easter Day, a period of some forty hours, His Soul remained separated from His Body. It was during this interval that the Soul of Jesus “descended into hell.” The word “hell” in the Creed, signifies the underworld, or the unseen world. It does not mean the place of torment reserved for the devil and his angels, but the abode of departed spirits, of which our Lord had spoken to the penitent thief under the name of “paradise.”

From the death of Abel until the time of our Lord's Passion, great numbers of souls had passed out of this life into the unseen world. These disembodied souls were in a place of safe-keeping in what is known as the “intermediate state,” by which we understand the state of the departed between death and the last judgment. St. Peter describes some of these souls as “the spirits in prison,” and tells us that our Lord visited the realms of the dead after His Passion, in order that He might announce to them the glad tidings of his victory over Satan.<sup>1</sup>

Our Lord's descent into hell is a subject about which little can be said with certainty. As to what actually took place there at His coming, we do not know. We may believe that some special blessing to the departed resulted from His presence at such a time, but we have no means of knowing any details.

<sup>1</sup> I St. Pet. iii. 19; iv. 6.

Connected with our Lord's descent into hell, is a subject of some importance of which we will now speak. We refer to the condition of the departed in the intermediate state.

Holy Scripture seems to imply that at death, the soul goes before God for the particular judgment, and is then consigned to a place of joy or misery in the intermediate state. This joy is not the final joy of heaven, neither is this misery that of everlasting punishment. This *particular judgment* is to be distinguished from the final or *general judgment*. The general judgment is represented as a vast assize at which all the world will be assembled, and which will not take place until after the resurrection at the end of the world; hence it is called "the last judgment." Our Lord Himself so describes it in St. Matt. xxv. 31, 32, "When the Son of Man shall come in His glory . . . before Him shall be gathered all nations: and He shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats." Upon the general judgment at the end of the world, the condition of souls in eternity depends. No one, however good he has been, will receive his final degree of bliss immediately after death; and no one, however bad he has been, will then receive his final measure of rejection. All souls, good and bad alike, go at death to a place of waiting where we believe they receive a foretaste, though not the actual realization, of their final lot in eternity. This we may conclude from the teaching of our Lord in the parable of the rich man and the beggar, of which we read in St. Luke xvi. 19, etc. Our Lord is describing the state of two souls in the interval between death and the judgment.

That He is not speaking of heaven or hell is evident. The Greek word translated "hell" in the sentence "And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments," is "hades," and is never used in Holy Scripture for the place of everlasting punishment. The rich man's allusion to his five brethren still living upon earth, also shews that the time spoken of is that previous to the resurrection and the general judgment. It is not until after these events, that men will reach their final state in eternity.

As far as the souls of the saved are concerned, we may regard the intermediate state as a preparation for the life of heaven. We may believe that purification from the stains of sin committed in this life, forms a necessary part of such preparation. Dr. Pusey thought that "amid the rest and felicity of knowing that they are saved, that they cannot again have the very faintest wish to commit the very slightest sin . . . the temporary banishment from the sight of God will be intense purifying suffering."<sup>1</sup>

No one, however good a life he may have lived on earth, is fitted at once to come into that glorious Presence. There are stains and imperfections still clinging to the souls of the very best men, which must needs be purged and done away, before the full sight of God can be endured, or such Presence be enjoyed. There is a legend of the middle ages which teaches a great truth. A certain bishop had some ill-will towards a city which had rejected his authority. He saw in a vision an empty throne in the next world intended for himself.

<sup>1</sup> *What is of Faith as to Everlasting Punishment?* Third Edition, p. 119.

On advancing to occupy this throne he was motioned back, being told that he was not then fit to occupy it. Turning his eye within, he saw a black spot on his soul. It was the grudge he bore towards the city which had despised his authority. He forgave the injury, and soon after died.

In the time of waiting between death and the last judgment, the final preparation for God's Presence is made. When we reflect upon what we really are, and what God is, and how much of the ways of heaven we have yet to learn, we cannot but heartily thank God that He has provided such an interval, in which the work of grace begun on earth may be continued and perfected in paradise. Speaking of the saintly John Keble, Dr. Pusey wrote,—“It would be expected of such a humble soul as that of the Author of *The Christian Year*, that the prospect of such a preparation was an unspeakable comfort to him within a year of his death. He expressed it both to myself and others.”<sup>1</sup>

Our thoughts of those in paradise, who in this life sought to obey God and to keep themselves pure and true, can only be those of unspeakable rest in Christ.<sup>2</sup> It has moreover been widely believed in the Church that the more exalted of the faithful departed, though not yet admitted to the unveiled Presence of God,<sup>3</sup> are even now brought into close association with our Lord in His heavenly glory and mediation.

For the many who depart this life apparently

<sup>1</sup> *What is of Faith*, p. 122, note.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. xiv. 13.

<sup>3</sup> The opinion that the Martyrs entered heaven immediately after death, has been generally held in the Church.

neither good enough for heaven nor bad enough for hell, we may hope that a place of mercy is provided in the intermediate state, in which the evil will be completely purged, and the good perfectly developed. It is reasonable to suppose that when this purification is accomplished, such souls will enter into perfect peace, and advance towards that final bliss which will follow the resurrection of the body and the last judgment.

“Every heresy is the intellectual vengeance of some suppressed truth.” This is so of forgetfulness of the truth of which we are thinking. Such forgetfulness has led to the gravest consequences. Unmindful of the merciful provision of a place of preparation between death and the judgment, men have come to deny the existence of hell. Instinctively feeling that so many souls leave this life unfitted for heaven, and ignorant of the truth of the intermediate state, they have naturally rebelled against the thought of such souls being eternally lost. Thus, with no other alternative before the mind, they have been led to deny that there is any hell at all. A true belief in the intermediate state would have saved them from their error.

Again and again we see that the abuse of a thing is fatal to its right use. It is one of the unhappy results of exaggerated teaching that in the re-action against that which is false, that which is true is lost sight of. And such is the case in regard to the intermediate state. At the time of the Reformation, serious errors and abuses largely prevailed concerning the condition of the departed. To one of these we have already alluded in speaking of the sale of Indulgences (pp. 83-85). It is against such



errors and abuses that the English Church protests in Article XXII. This article is not meant to condemn the Primitive doctrine of the intermediate state as we have stated it, but only "the Romish doctrine" which so largely obtained at the time of which we are speaking, and which could claim no support from the teaching of antiquity. The term *purgatory* simply means a place or process of cleansing or purging; it is disused amongst us because of certain ideas which in medieval times had attached themselves to the word. Of these we have already spoken in discussing the causes of the Reformation.

The subject of prayer for the departed will be treated of later in this book (see pages 212, 252).

### 7. *The Resurrection.*

**"The Third Day He Rose again from the Dead."**

The lifeless Body of our Saviour was taken down from the cross on the evening of Good Friday by Joseph of Arimathea and Nicodemus, two of His disciples. The first of these was a rich man who owned a garden in which he had prepared for himself a tomb, hewn out of the rock. To this unused sepulchre, the sacred Body of our Lord was carried. Before being laid to rest, the lifeless form had been wound in the long linen bandages used by the Jews in burial, in the folds of which spices, to the weight of a hundred pounds, had been placed for the preservation of the Body. The head of our Lord was also wrapped round with a napkin,

*The Resurrection.*



“Since by man came death, by man came also the Resurrection of the dead.”—1 Cor. xv. 21.

leaving the lower part of the face and the neck uncovered. It is important to notice these arrangements from what afterwards happened. Placing the sacred Body of the Lord in the cave, the two disciples rolled a great stone to the opening, and departed.

The chief priests, with Pilate's permission, took the precaution of setting a seal, probably of clay, upon the stone, thus making it impossible for the Body to be disturbed or removed without leaving traces in the broken seal. A guard of Roman soldiers was also granted them to watch by the tomb. The reason given for this special care was, to use their own words, "lest His disciples come by night, and steal Him away, and say unto the people, He is risen from the dead."<sup>1</sup> But all such precautions were in vain. Devised by our Lord's enemies, they became, in God's providence, important evidences to the truth of the Resurrection.

Very early in the morning of the third day after the Crucifixion, the Soul of Jesus returned from the realms of the dead, and entered again the lifeless Body within the cave. Thus was fulfilled the prophecy of David "Thou shalt not leave my Soul in hell; neither shalt Thou suffer Thy Holy One to see corruption."<sup>2</sup> The sacred Body thus brought to life, passed out of the folds of the winding-clothes and the napkin, and through the rock, into the outer world. Unseen by mortal eyes, the Lord rose glorious from the dead.

The holy women, who had followed Jesus in the days of His ministry, came at sunrise to visit the tomb, intending to complete the

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxvii. 64.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. xvi. 11.

embalming of the Body. As they drew near, the question arose "Who shall roll us away the stone from the door of the sepulchre? And when they looked, they saw that the stone was rolled away."<sup>1</sup> It had been rolled away not to permit our Lord to come forth,—He had already done so before the stone was moved,—but to enable the holy women to see into the empty sepulchre. Instead of finding, as they expected, the lifeless form lying wrapped in the grave-clothes, they beheld an angel who said "Ye seek Jesus of Nazareth, which was crucified: He is risen: He is not here: behold the place where they laid Him."<sup>2</sup> Hurrying away in utter astonishment, the women carried the news to the Apostles. St. Peter and St. John at once set off to see for themselves; arriving at the tomb, they looked in, and beheld the grave-clothes lying as an empty envelope, which, without being unrolled, had collapsed with the weight of the spices, after the Body had been withdrawn, and the napkin in the form of an empty helmet lying a little apart, the distance from the shoulders to the lower part of the face of the dead.<sup>3</sup>

This was not the first time that the dead had come back to life, many cases of resurrection are recorded in the Bible; but our Lord's rising again to life differed from all such. These risings to life were in every instance brought about by the power of another, and the person thus raised died again. But Jesus Christ rose from the dead by His own power through His Spirit, and never to die again. His own words are,—“I have power to lay down (my life), and

<sup>1</sup> St. Mark xvi. 2, etc.<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 6.<sup>3</sup> St. John xx. 5, etc.

I have power to take it again,"<sup>1</sup> and "I am He that liveth and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death."<sup>2</sup>

The Resurrection of our Lord is better attested than any fact in history. He was seen eight times alive after He rose again by His most intimate friends, who could not be deceived,—on one occasion by above five hundred persons at once. One of the Apostles, St. Thomas, refused to believe that His Master *was* risen, and was only convinced by seeing the very wound-marks on His Body, and touching them with his hands. The Resurrection is the central truth of Christianity. "If Christ be not raised, your faith is vain."<sup>3</sup> Our Lord's rising again to life is the proof of the truth of all He taught, and of His claim to be the Incarnate Son of God. He Himself gave this test in saying,—“Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up, . . . He spake of the temple of His Body,”<sup>4</sup> and alluded to His death and resurrection. It is on this account that we find the Resurrection of Jesus the great topic of the preaching of the Apostles.

### 8. *The Great Forty Days.*

Jesus Christ rose from the dead on Easter Day, but He did not at once go up to heaven; for a period of forty days He tarried on earth. We know these days in the Church as “the great forty days.” What was the purpose of this delay?

We reply,—that He might give to all a

<sup>1</sup> St. John x. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. i. 18.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Cor. xv. 17.

<sup>4</sup> St. John ii. 19, 21.

thorough conviction that His rising from the dead was a real event. The Resurrection was the great proof that our Lord was the Son of God made Man, and that all He claimed to be, and to teach, was true. It was necessary for our faith that we should be perfectly sure that He really did come to life again after His Passion. He therefore made the fact quite plain by many acts and words,—talking, walking, and eating with His disciples, shewing them His wounded hands, feet and side. In this way, a number of reliable witnesses were trained to go forth into the world and say;—“We know that He rose from the grave, for we saw Him alive as certainly as we see you alive.” In the early days of the Church, one of the chief works of the Apostles and disciples was to bear witness to the Resurrection of Jesus. Thus St. Luke tells us that “He shewed Himself alive after His Passion by many infallible proofs (i.e., proofs about which there could be no mistake), being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.”<sup>1</sup>

He thus stayed below not only to make His followers sure of the truth of His rising from the dead, but also that He might speak with them concerning “the kingdom of God;” i.e. the Church. During the great forty days there were many matters connected with the working of the Church to be arranged. He had not given His last instructions. In the Gospels we learn much about the Church, but in the Acts of the Apostles, and the Epistles, we learn more. The Acts of the Apostles is the first Church history, and there we read of things

<sup>1</sup> Acts i. 3.

being done of which no record is found in the Gospels; for example,—the first day of the week or Sunday, is observed instead of the seventh day or the Sabbath; the Sacrament of Confirmation is ministered; the threefold Ministry begins to take shape. Of these things we read in the Acts and in the Epistles without any record of their institution by Christ. There can be no doubt that the ordering of such matters was amongst “the things pertaining to the kingdom of God,” of which Jesus Christ spoke to His disciples during the great forty days.

During this time our Lord was going in and out amongst His disciples in His risen Body. His Body, after the Resurrection, possessed mysterious properties which it did not possess before. As we have seen, He passed out of the grave-clothes and through the walls which hemmed Him in, without those clothes being unwound, or the great stone being moved from the door of the sepulchre. He appeared to Mary Magdalene, but she supposed Him to be the gardener, so strangely was He altered.<sup>1</sup> He appeared to two of His disciples “in another form” as they journeyed to Emmaus, and it was only as He vanished out of their sight that they recognised Him.<sup>2</sup> He suddenly appeared in the room in which the Apostles were sitting with barred doors, without those doors being opened.<sup>3</sup> It was on the occasion of this appearance, that Jesus gave to all the Apostles the power of forgiving sins in His Name,<sup>4</sup> which He had previously promised to St. Peter at Cæsarea Philippi.<sup>5</sup> He was the same, yet not the same, for He was clothed in the spiritual body of the

<sup>1</sup> St. John xx. 14.<sup>2</sup> St. Mark xvi. 12.<sup>3</sup> St. John xx. 19. <sup>4</sup> Ibid. 22, 23. <sup>5</sup> St. Matt. xvi. 18, 19.

Resurrection. Such were signs of the marvellous properties of the risen Body, in which, to crown all, at the appointed time He ascended into heaven.

### 9. *The Ascension.*

#### “He Ascended into Heaven.”

During the great forty days our Lord manifested Himself to the Apostles from time to time. He did not abide with them constantly as before, but only came to them at intervals, and for brief periods. There was much uncertainty about His presence; His appearances and His disappearances were alike startling. Before His death, He taught the disciples that the time would come when He would leave them in bodily presence. He had said,—“It is expedient for you that I go away.”<sup>1</sup> “A little while, and ye shall not see me: and again, a little while, and ye shall see me, because I go to the Father.”<sup>2</sup> “I leave the world, and go to the Father.”<sup>3</sup>

And now, on the fortieth day after His resurrection, the time came when these sayings should be fulfilled. Taking the eleven disciples with Him, He led them for the last time out of Jerusalem, across the brook Kedron, to the summit of Mount Olivet. On the way thither, He delivered to them His final charge in the majestic words, “All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you

<sup>1</sup> St. John xvi. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 16.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 28.



*The Ascension.*



“He lifted up His hands, and blessed them.”

*St. Luke xxiv. 50.*

always, even unto the end of the world.”<sup>1</sup> Then stretching out His hands in blessing, He rose slowly from the earth, and ascended higher and higher, until a bright luminous cloud enfolded Him, and He was lost to view. “It came to pass, while He blessed them, He was parted from them, and carried up into heaven.”<sup>2</sup>

Behind the cloud how wondrous must the scene have been, for the gates of heaven were lifted up, and the holy angels poured forth to conduct their King, returning from His humiliation, to the highest place of honour at the right hand of the Eternal Father. “He was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.”<sup>3</sup> The word “sitteth” in the Creed, speaks of the rest, dominion and judgship of our ascended Lord.

The Ascension is the completion of the Incarnation. The Son of God took our nature in the womb of the Blessed Virgin never to put it off. He donned human nature never to doff it. Hence this article of the Creed teaches us the eternity of the Incarnation. As St. Chrysostom says,—“He shall for ever inhabit this tabernacle. He has put on our flesh, not as if to lay it aside again, but to have it ever with Himself.” He is still Son of Man, and will be for ever and ever. The truth of the eternal manhood of Jesus is one of supreme importance, for it has much to do with our salvation.

By His Ascension our Blessed Lord opened the gates of heaven which, since the fall, had been closed to man. Our Lord was the first of the human race to enter heaven. He ascended into heaven that we might follow Him; thus He

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 18, etc.

<sup>2</sup> St. Luke xxiv. 51.

<sup>3</sup> St. Mark xvi. 19.

is described as "the Forerunner, entering in for us."<sup>1</sup> A forerunner is one who goes in front that others may follow. He tells us that He went to heaven "to prepare ■ place for us."<sup>2</sup>

The great type of our ascended Lord in His work in heaven, is found in the action of the Jewish high priest on the day of Atonement. After offering sacrifice for the sins of the people, he took the blood of the victim and, passing through the Holy Place, entered alone into the Holy of Holies, the very presence-chamber of God, and there presented the blood, sprinkling it before the mercy seat. This solemn action of the high priest on the day of Atonement forms the ground work of the Epistle to the Hebrews. The writer of that Epistle brings out most clearly the truth that our ascended Lord is the true High Priest, and that He has entered into heaven itself, there to present His sacrifice, and "to appear in the presence of God for us."<sup>3</sup>

The action of the high priesthood of our Lord in offering Himself in heaven, is the second part of His sacrifice. He is represented in the Revelation, as "a Lamb as it had been slain,"<sup>4</sup> i.e. with the wound-marks upon His sacred form. We know that Jesus bore the prints of the nails and spear in His risen body, and that He carried this body so marked into heaven. It is the work of our dear Lord as our High Priest to continually plead for His Church in the presence of His Father. It would seem that He bears the scars, the tokens of His Passion, on His glorified body in heaven, for this very purpose. "He ever liveth to make

<sup>1</sup> Heb. vi. 20.

<sup>2</sup> St. John xiv. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Heb. ix. 24.

<sup>4</sup> Rev. v. 6.

intercession for us.”<sup>1</sup> It is through His perpetual pleading that the gifts of grace are ours in the Church. As the Head of the Body, our Blessed Lord is the medium through Whom grace descends upon us, His members. “When He ascended up on high, He led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.”<sup>2</sup>

Every time we pray “through Jesus Christ our Lord,” or beg for mercy and help for His sake, we throw ourselves into the stream of the unceasing pleading of Jesus in the heavens. But beyond prayer, there is a special way in which we may share in the blessings of His heavenly pleading. Before He ascended to exercise His office as our Great High Priest, He ordained a great mystical Service in which we, on earth, may have a real part in what He does above. Jesus Christ is now pleading the merits of His Life and Death before the face of the Eternal Father, and He has given us the means of doing the same on earth. This Service is the Holy Eucharist. In the Holy Eucharist we shew forth Christ’s Life and Death before God below, as He pleads the same before the Throne above. The Eucharistic Sacrifice is the earthly counterpart of the heavenly pleading, as it is also of the worship of the “Lamb as it had been slain.” Thus the worship of heaven and earth are one.

<sup>1</sup> Heb. vii 25.

<sup>2</sup> Eph. iv. 8.

10. *The Return to Judgment.*

“From thence He shall come to judge the Quick and the Dead.”

The second coming of our Lord, which is the hope of His Church, will differ in many ways from His first coming. He came first in great humility when He did not abhor the Virgin's womb, His second coming shall be in awful majesty. His first coming was as the Saviour of the world, He will come again to be our Judge. It is in commemoration of these great events, the one in the past, the other in the future, that the Church keeps the season of Advent.

That our Lord will come again is perfectly certain, for He has said so; but the time of His coming is veiled in uncertainty. He who said, “they shall see the Son of Man coming in the clouds with great power and glory. And then shall He send His angels, and shall gather together His elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven,” went on to add, “But of that day and that hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father.”<sup>1</sup>

The purpose of the second coming of Jesus Christ is stated in the Creed,—“He shall come to judge the quick and the dead.” By the expression “the quick,” we are to understand the living,—those who shall be alive on the earth at the second coming of Jesus Christ.

<sup>1</sup> St. Mark xiii. 26, 27, 32.

Of such it is written that they "which are alive and remain shall be caught up . . . in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air."<sup>1</sup>

The day of judgment is described as "the day when the Son of Man is revealed."<sup>2</sup> By this we may understand that before pronouncing sentence, Jesus Christ will first satisfy the assembled universe of His righteous claim to be their judge, so that friend and foe alike may be convinced of His perfect equity.

The day of judgment will be the day of justice, when all life's inequalities will be put right, and everyone will get his due. As such St. John speaks of it,—“I saw a great white throne, and Him that sat on it, from Whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.”<sup>3</sup> The judge will be none other than our Incarnate Lord Himself, “the Son of Man.” “The Father hath given Him authority to execute judgment also, because He is the Son of Man.”<sup>4</sup> We shall be judged by one who is both God and Man. In the divinity of our Lord, we have the assurance that He will judge us fairly, for as God He knows our frailty,

<sup>1</sup> 1 Thess. iv. 17.

<sup>2</sup> St. Luke xvii. 30.

<sup>3</sup> Rev. xx. 11-13.

<sup>4</sup> St. John v. 27.

our temptations, and our struggles. In the humanity of our Lord, we have the pledge that we shall be judged tenderly, for as Man He knows from experience what we are, and what we can do. We shall be judged with God's perfect justice, and with man's perfect sympathy. The result of the judgment is separation; the Judge "shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats," every soul going to its own place, the place for which it has fitted itself, at the right hand, or at the left hand of the Judge. "Then shall the king say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world,"—and again "Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels."<sup>1</sup>

In speaking of this solemn subject St. Basil writes,—“Blessed is that soul, which day and night hath no other care than how, in the great day, when every creature shall stand around the Judge to give an account of their works, she shall be able to relate her life. For whosoever continually places that day and that hour before his eyes, and ever thinks of his defence at that most just tribunal, is likely to commit no sins, or at least very few.”<sup>2</sup>

#### iv. “I believe in the Holy Ghost.”

The Holy Ghost is the third Person of the Ever-Blessed Trinity, proceeding from the

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxv. 31 to end.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted by Bishop Forbes. *Nicene Creed*, p. 249.

Father and the Son, and is, with Them, worthy of Divine honour. We are not to think of the Holy Spirit as a mere influence, power, or quality, but as a Person. He possesses influence, and powers, and qualities, but these are to be distinguished from His Person, just as the perfume which a flower gives forth, is to be distinguished from the flower itself. In many places in the Scriptures, that is said of the Holy Spirit which can only be said of a Person. We are taught that He intercedes for us, that He teaches us, that He strives with us, that He convicts us of sin, and that He may be grieved and resisted. All such things can only be said of a Person.

The Holy Spirit is not merely a Person, but He is a Divine Person. "The Holy Ghost, proceeding from the Father and the Son, is of one substance, majesty, and glory, with the Father and the Son, very and eternal God."<sup>1</sup> When the angel Gabriel appeared to the Blessed Virgin Mary at Nazareth, he said,—“The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that Holy Thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.”<sup>2</sup> In the words of St. Ambrose, “We cannot doubt the Spirit to be Creator, Whom we admit to be the Author of the Lord’s Incarnation.” Our Blessed Lord taught the Divinity of the Holy Spirit when He declared that “all manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.”<sup>3</sup> He could not thus have spoken, if the Holy Ghost was but a

<sup>1</sup> Article V.

<sup>2</sup> St. Luke i. 35.

<sup>3</sup> St. Matt. xii. 31.



creature, and not God. St. Peter told Ananias that he lied to the Holy Ghost, and that in so doing he had not lied unto men, but unto God.<sup>1</sup> St. Paul teaches that the Church is the temple of God, because the Spirit of God indwells her.<sup>2</sup> So again, the Nicene Creed declares the Holy Ghost to be "the Lord," i.e. the Lord Jehovah, "Who with the Father and the Son together is worshipped and glorified."

This Creed also bestows upon the Holy Spirit the title of the Giver of Life, i.e. the Quickener, or Life-Giver. In the account of the creation of the world, He is described as "moving (or brooding) upon the face of the waters."<sup>3</sup> By the vital energy of the Divine Spirit the works of creation were brought to perfection. As the Life-Giver, the Spirit overshadowed the Blessed Virgin Mary, and thus enabled her to conceive in her womb the Incarnate Lord.<sup>4</sup> On the day of Pentecost, the Eternal Spirit descended upon the Church to fill her with Divine life, and to abide with her for ever. Jesus Christ is "the Life," but the Holy Spirit is "the Life-Giver," Who applies the work of Christ to our souls in the Church.

The Holy Spirit is said, in the Nicene Creed, to proceed from the Father and the Son. This does not only refer to His coming into the world, and upon the Church, but also and chiefly, to His eternal relation to the Father and the Son. We believe that He is the Spirit of God and of Christ. "The Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and the Son, as from One Principle of Life. As the lake is formed by the water from the river and from the spring . . . so the

<sup>1</sup> Acts v. 3, 4.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cor. iii. 16, 17.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. i. 2.

<sup>4</sup> St. Luke i. 34, 35.

Blessed Spirit ceaselessly derives His origin from the Godhead of the Father and the Son. He is the 'pure river of water of life' which proceedeth 'out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.' Our Lord describes the Spirit's procession from Himself, as receiving 'of Mine,' not of Me, and signifies His immediate union with the Father, when He promises His advent in the words 'Whom I will send unto you from the Father.'<sup>1</sup>

The Holy Spirit inspired the prophets of the Old Testament, and the apostles and the evangelists of the New. By this we mean that He enabled them to select out of the mass of revelation such truths, and to place on record such facts of history, as possessed an abiding value and a lasting interest to mankind; giving them the impulse to record such truths, and preserving them from error in so doing. The inspiration of the Holy Spirit fixed and safeguarded revelation.

## v. "The Holy Catholic Church."

### i. *The Holy Ghost in the Church.*

The mention of the Holy Ghost in the Creed is followed at once by that of the Holy Catholic Church. We pass quite naturally from belief in the Holy Spirit to belief in the Church, for the Church is the Temple of the Holy Ghost.

It is a fact of deep significance that the Christian Church did not commence its work in the world during the lifetime of Jesus Christ.

<sup>1</sup> Hutchings, *The Person and Work of the Holy Ghost*. 3rd Edition, p. 33.



THE DESCENT OF THE HOLY GHOST.

Before His Ascension Christ founded the Church; He appointed the Apostles to be the first officers of the Church, giving them authority to act for Him, and instructing them how to act after His departure. But He accompanied this with the command that they were not to exercise their office until sometime in the future. His last charge was, "Tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high."<sup>1</sup>

It was not until ten days after Christ went up to heaven, that the great event happened which gave the Christian Church its real start in the world. That event was the descent of God the Holy Ghost upon the Church on the day of Pentecost, the first Whitsun Day, recorded in the second chapter of the Acts of the Apostles. That the Holy Ghost should thus come, had been foretold by the prophet Joel in the words, "And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh."<sup>2</sup> Before Christ went up He had chosen the first ministers of His Church. He had charged them to teach, to baptise, to absolve, and to celebrate the Holy Eucharist, yet they did none of these things at first,—they waited.

For what did they wait? They waited for the fulfilment of Christ's own promise; for that power which was to come upon them from on high. They waited for the coming of the Holy Ghost, the Life-Giver.<sup>3</sup>

Between Ascension Day and Whitsun Day there is no record of the Apostles performing any ministerial actions. They neither taught,

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke xxiv. 49.

<sup>2</sup> Joel ii. 28.

<sup>3</sup> Acts i. 4, 8.

baptised, confirmed, ordained, nor celebrated the Holy Eucharist. All was in a state of suspense, until the promised power should be theirs which should enable them to do all that Christ had bidden them. They were as soldiers who had received their orders, but were waiting for their arms. Before Pentecost the Church was as "the dry bones" spoken of by Ezekiel, brought indeed together, but motionless, awaiting the breath from on high.

After the descent of the Holy Ghost all this was changed. Suspense was at an end. The Apostles at once began to carry out all the instructions which Christ had given them. We read of their going forth immediately to labour in all places, teaching, baptising, confirming, celebrating the Holy Eucharist, and ordaining others. From all this we learn that the coming of the Holy Ghost upon the Church was an event of the greatest importance.

We must not think that the Holy Spirit came only to give the Church its start in the world, and then withdrew His presence. He came never to depart. He came to be the Church's perpetual endowment throughout all time. Our Lord expressly promised that the Holy Spirit should come upon His Church never to leave it. He promised the Holy Spirit's presence as an abiding possession. He said "I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, that He may abide with you for ever; even the Spirit of Truth."<sup>1</sup> The gift of Pentecost shall never be withdrawn. The Holy Catholic Church is the perpetual abode and permanent home of the Spirit of God.

<sup>1</sup> St. John xiv. 16, 17.

*2. The Office of the Church.*

The Church, the Body of Christ, is a Divine society spread throughout the world, established by Jesus Christ, and of which He is the Head and the baptised are the members. The Church is subject to the authority of lawful pastors, the bishops whom Christ charged to instruct, to feed, and to govern her members. Under the bishops, as fellow-workers, are the priests and deacons. The Church teaches to the faithful the truth which Christ delivered to the Apostles, and she ministers the grace which flows from His sacred Humanity by means of the Sacraments.

The first part of the Creed, and by far the larger part, concerns our belief in God. We are taught about God Himself, and what He is to us. We are taught that in the One God are Three Persons,—the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. We are taught to believe in God the Father as Creator, in God the Son as Redeemer, in God the Holy Ghost as Sanctifier. From the opening words "I believe in God," down to the words "I believe in the Holy Ghost," the subject of the Creed is God. If we look on to the end of the Creed we come to the words, "the Forgiveness of sins, the Resurrection of the Body, and the Life Everlasting." These are matters in which man is chiefly concerned. The Forgiveness of Sins, the Resurrection of the body, and the Life Everlasting, are the three great blessings of the Gospel, for which all men hope. In the Apostles' Creed, "the Holy Catholic Church" stands

between the words concerning God, and those concerning man.

Now the structure of the Creed teaches that we may not go straight from belief in the Three Persons of the Holy Trinity, to belief in the three main blessings of the Gospel, until we have expressed our belief in the Holy Catholic Church. We do not pass from our belief in the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, to belief in the blessings of the Gospel, until we have said, "I believe in the Holy Catholic Church."

The position of "the Holy Catholic Church" in the Creed teaches an important truth, viz.: that it is God's will to bestow the Forgiveness of sins, the Resurrection of the body, and the Life everlasting, *in and through* the Holy Catholic Church. It must not be thought that God deserts all those who are outside His Church. Christ is "the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world."<sup>\*</sup> It is true that God's grace overflows the Church, yet the fact remains, that it is *pledged* to us only within the sphere of the Holy Catholic Church. God's grace is not bound, but we are bound to seek it where He has promised it,—that is, in the Church. There is no guarantee or covenanted security outside the Church. The Church is the circle wherein God chiefly works: to be outside the Church is to be outside that circle.

This important truth is revealed by God in the New Testament, and it is taught by the position which "the Holy Catholic Church" occupies in the Apostles' Creed.

<sup>\*</sup> St. John i. 9.

### 3. *The Notes of the Church.*

From the Creeds we learn that the Church possesses four notes, or distinguishing marks. The Church is One, Holy, Catholic, and Apostolic.

THE CHURCH IS ONE, for there is none other, and because the faithful who form the Church are united to One Head, even Jesus Christ, by the same Sacraments. They hold the same faith, and are subject to the same authority exercised by the bishops who represent Christ. The unity of the Church is mainly an internal unity, which ought to shew itself in an external unity. Through the sin of man this external unity has been broken.

THE CHURCH IS HOLY. The source of the Church's holiness is the indwelling presence of the Holy Ghost, who sanctifies her members by uniting them to Christ, the Head. The Church offers to her members grace and truth as the means of sanctification, and is the home where saints are nurtured and formed.

THE CHURCH IS CATHOLIC, "because it is throughout the world, from one end of the earth to the other; and because it teaches universally and completely one and all the doctrines which ought to come to man's knowledge, concerning things both visible and invisible, heavenly and earthly; and because it subjugates in order to godliness every class of men, governors and governed, learned and unlearned; and because it universally treats and heals every sort of sins, which are committed by soul and body, and possesses in itself every form of



virtue which is named, both in deeds and words, and in every kind of spiritual gifts." <sup>1</sup> The word *catholic* means 'universal,' whilst the word *protestant* means 'making a protest.' Protestant is a negative term, and does not express positive belief of any kind. It is a mistake for a churchman to describe himself as "a protestant," for the term is nowhere to be found either in the Bible or in the Prayer Book, and ought not to be adopted as a designation of the Church or her members. It is true that the term "protestant" occurs in the oath in the Coronation Service. But this oath is imposed on the sole authority of Parliament, not of the Church; and the term 'protestant' is simply a popular expression excluding all Roman authority, and nothing more.

THE CHURCH IS APOSTOLIC, because she can trace her origin to the Apostles of Christ; and is governed by their successors, and believes, preserves, and teaches their doctrine.

It is a matter of regret that not one of the four notes of the Church is now, or ever has been, universally realised. Her unity is marred by grievous divisions, her whole history shews an imperfectly attained sanctity, the greater part of the world still lies outside her fold, her discipline has never been fully accepted or faithfully exercised. Yet these "notes" form the hope of the Church, and when she attains to their full measure, she will be presented as the Bride to the heavenly Bridegroom "a glorious Church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing." <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> St. Cyril, Cat. Lect. xviii. 23.

<sup>2</sup> Eph. v. 27.

**vi. "The Communion of Saints."**

By the term "communion" in this article of the Creed, we are to understand "fellowship." This fellowship of saints is grounded on the truth that all the saints, living and departed, are united to Jesus Christ, and form His mystic Body. The saints are members one of another, because they are members of Christ's Body, the Holy Catholic Church. "So we, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another."<sup>1</sup>

The term "saints," or holy ones, is applied in the New Testament to all the baptised living upon earth, who have not forfeited baptismal grace. The baptised are saints in the sense that they have been sanctified by baptism, and are called to lead a holy life. As fellow-members of the Body of Christ, they hold the same faith, receive the same sacraments, join in the same worship, and share in common its blessings and its hopes.

But in later use, and according to modern custom, the term "saints" is applied to the more distinguished members of the Church, and especially to such as have departed this life, and are now with Christ. The Church has thus specially honoured the Blessed Virgin, the Apostles, and the Martyrs, and other great leaders of the army of the faithful. These may be regarded now as among "the spirits of just men made perfect,"<sup>2</sup> and certain of their number we keep in honour, and commemorate on "Saints' Days." Such are described in the collect for All Saints' Day as the "blessed saints." This same communion also embraces

<sup>1</sup> Rom. xii. 5.<sup>2</sup> Heb. xii. 23.

all the faithful departed who are now in Paradise, in the intermediate state. The article of the Creed teaches that we are in close relation to all these holy ones beyond the grave, that they remember us before God and pray for us.

The term "saints" is also applied in the Old Testament to the holy angels,<sup>1</sup> the first family of God, who minister to all below who are in Christ. The Epistle to the Hebrews<sup>2</sup> speaks of "an innumerable company of angels," to whom the redeemed race of mankind "are come," and who will hereafter be gathered into a closer union with us in Christ.

Thus the communion of saints embraces the whole family of God,—the glorified saints, the holy angels, the faithful departed, and the faithful still on earth.

That the saints who have gone before pray for us, has always been the belief of the Church. We believe that they join in prayer for us on earth with a power which was not theirs whilst in the flesh,—the mother for her children, the priest for his flock, friend for friend. In what way, or to what extent, the saints are conscious of our needs, has not been revealed to us; yet we may ask God to grant us a share in their intercessions.

The English Church in Article XXII. condemns "the Romish doctrine concerning invocation of saints," that is to say, that system of prayer to the saints which led to their being regarded otherwise than as exalted suppliants. Before the Reformation serious abuses had arisen. It was supposed, for instance, that the saints had power with God because of their own merits, and that they were kinder and had

<sup>1</sup> Deut. xxxiii. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Ch. xii. 22.

greater sympathy for sinners than Christ our Saviour. Modern Roman books of devotion speak of the Blessed Virgin Mary especially, in a manner which we believe to be quite inconsistent with the honour due to our Lord.

Upon this subject we quote the words of Dr. Pusey,—“The exclusive address of unseen beings has an obvious tendency at once to fall into a sort of worship; it is too like the mode in which we address Almighty God to be any way safe; the exclusive request of their intercessions is likely at once to constitute them intercessors in a way different from God’s servants on earth, and (which is the great practical evil of these prayers in the Roman Church) to interfere with the office of the Great Intercessor;”<sup>1</sup> and again “For members of the English Church, who desire the prayers of the departed, it has to him ever seemed safest to express the desire for those prayers to God ‘of Whom and through Whom and to Whom are all things.’”<sup>2</sup>

It is quite right to pray for the departed, if we have a good hope that they died in God’s favour. And where no such hope exists, we may commend them to His mercy. If we remember that they are still in a place of waiting, it is natural to pray for them. The Jews regularly used such prayers in their public services, and our Lord, who attended those services, must have often joined in them. He nowhere rebuked the practice. In St. Paul’s words,—“the Lord grant unto him that he may find mercy of the Lord in that day,”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Letter to Bishop of Oxford, p. 198.

<sup>2</sup> Letter to the Bishop of London, p. 143, and note.

<sup>3</sup> 2 Tim. i. 18, *compare with verse 16.*

we have an example of prayer for the departed. The context seems to shew that Onesiphorus was dead when St. Paul wrote these words. The Church has always prayed for the dead. In the writings of St. Augustine we read that his mother Monica, at the close of her life "gave no injunctions concerning such things as these (her burial arrangements), but desired only that a memorial of her might be made at Thine Altar." The allusion here is to prayers for the dead in union with the Eucharistic Sacrifice. St. Augustine adds,—“May she rest, then, in peace together with her husband. . . . And inspire, O Lord my God . . . my brethren . . . that so many as shall read these pages, may at Thy Altar remember Thy hand-maid Monica, with Patricius.”<sup>1</sup> The early forms of Service for the Holy Communion are called the Primitive Liturgies. There is not one of these which does not contain prayers for the dead. The early Liturgies possess an authority second only to the Holy Scriptures. We append a prayer drawn up from expressions in the Primitive Liturgies, to shew the kind of petitions we may safely make to God for the faithful dead.

‘Remember, O Lord God, the souls of Thy servants who have departed this life in Thy faith and fear, whom we remember, or who are forgotten upon earth. Do Thou grant unto them, and unto all who rest in Christ, a place of refreshment, of light, and of peace, in Thy kingdom, in Thy paradise, in the bosom of Abraham, where sorrow pain and sighing are banished away, and where the light of Thy Countenance ever shineth.’

<sup>1</sup> Confessions ix. 13.

With the weighty words of Dr. Pusey we will bring this section to a close. "The departed are included in our Eucharistic prayer, that 'we and all Thy whole Church may obtain remission of our sins, etc.' That we have no more to do with those who loved us here, must be false, because it is so contrary to love. It belongs to the Communion of Saints, that they, in the attainment of certain salvation, and incapable of a thought other than according to the mind of God are filled with His love, shall pray and long for us, who are still on the stormy sea of this world, our salvation still unsecured; and we, on our side, should pray for such things, as God in His goodness wills to bestow upon them."

### vii. "The Forgiveness of Sins."

The forgiveness of sins proceeds from the love and mercy of God and the sacred merits of our Lord Jesus Christ.

As we have already seen, the structure of the Creed teaches that the forgiveness of sins is to be obtained in the Holy Catholic Church. St. Augustine says that, "sins are forgiven in the Church in three ways; in Baptism, in Prayer, and in the greater humiliation of Penance."<sup>1</sup> All sin, actual as well as original, is washed away in Baptism. By "Prayer," St. Augustine refers to the petition in 'the Our Father,' "Forgive us our trespasses." By Penance, he refers to Sacramental Confession with a view to gaining Absolution. Of each of these modes of obtaining forgiveness we are to read more fully in the following chapters.

<sup>1</sup> *Sermon on the Creed to Catechumens*, 16.

viii. "The Resurrection of the Body and the Life Everlasting."

The two last Articles of the Creed concern the things which come after death.

DEATH is the separation of the soul from the body. We speak of death as "the passing away," for in death the soul leaves the body as a tenant quitting a house. "Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was: and the spirit shall return unto God Who gave it."<sup>1</sup> After death the body turns to dust in the grave, and there sleeps, awaiting the resurrection at the last day. Death is the penalty due to sin, and the price which sooner or later every member of a sinful race must pay. Adam and Eve brought sin into the world, and death followed as a punishment. "As by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned."<sup>2</sup>

THE RESURRECTION is the rising again of the body in which the soul was clothed on earth. At the last day the soul will return from the intermediate state, and re-enter the risen body. The body so raised will not be the natural body as it was in this life,<sup>3</sup> but a new and spiritual body, possessing new powers, and existing under new conditions in a new order of being, freed from all taint of evil and inclination to sin. The resurrection of the dead will take place through the power of Jesus Christ and of His Spirit. "Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear His voice, and shall come forth;"<sup>4</sup> "He that raised up Christ from

<sup>1</sup> Eccles. xii. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Rom. v. 12.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Cor. xv. 37.

<sup>4</sup> St. John v. 28.

the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by His Spirit that dwelleth in you.”<sup>1</sup>

A disembodied soul is only part of the complete man. The resurrection is necessary in order that the whole man, body and soul, may be perfected in eternity. We do good and evil with our bodies as well as our souls, and “we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.”<sup>2</sup>

JUDGMENT. In the hour of death the soul goes before God for His judgment. Upon this judgment, the condition of the soul during the time of waiting previous to the resurrection of the body depends.

The General Judgment will follow the resurrection of the dead. The purpose of the second judgment appears to be that all may be satisfied as to the justice of the sentence of the Judge, and that the soul's degree of eternal bliss or woe may be settled.

HELL is the place and penal condition “prepared for the devil and his angels.”<sup>3</sup> Hell was never intended for man, and he can only arrive there through a wilful, deliberate, and continued rejection of God and goodness. St. Bernard has beautifully written, “What doth God hate or punish except self-will? Let self-will cease and hell will not be.” We may hold it for a certainty that none will be doomed to such an awful destiny but those of whom our most merciful Saviour must say,—“They have both seen and hated both Me and My Father,”<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rom. viii. 11.

<sup>3</sup> St. Matt. xxv. 41.

<sup>2</sup> ■ Cor. v. 10.

<sup>4</sup> St. John xv. 24.



and in this attitude of soul have died, and remain. Hell is the condition of those who are wilfully and finally impenitent.

Faber's beautiful words concerning those outside the Church may be applied to the lost,—"I have no profession of faith to make about them, except that God is infinitely merciful to every soul, and that no one ever has been, or ever can be, lost by surprise or trapped in his ignorance; and, as to those who may be lost, I confidently believe that our Heavenly Father threw His arms round each created spirit, and looked it full in the face with bright eyes of love, in the darkness of its mortal life, and that of its own deliberate will it would not have Him."<sup>1</sup>

HEAVEN is the place and the blessed condition of unending happiness in the Presence of God, and His holy angels and saints. The happiness of heaven consists chiefly in the sight and possession of God,—the blest will "see the King in His beauty," and that for ever and ever. It consists also in an endless reunion with all we have loved below, who have died in grace, and in our being perfectly good and holy for evermore. All who depart this life in a right relation to God will be in heaven at last. Of the happiness of heaven it is written, "Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love Him."<sup>2</sup>

To which happiness may God, of His infinite mercy, bring the soul of every reader of this book.

<sup>1</sup> *The Creator and the Creature*, 3rd Edition, Book iii. chapter ii., p. 393.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cor. ii. 9.

# THE TEN COMMANDMENTS.

*Exodus xx. 3—18.*



LORD, HAVE MERCY UPON US,  
AND WRITE ALL THESE THY LAWS IN OUR HEARTS,  
WE BESEECH THEE.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE COMMANDMENTS.

**G**OD has endowed man with the great gift of freewill, by the exercise of which he is able to choose good or evil. In order to help man to a right choice, God has given to him the further gift of conscience. Conscience is the inward monitor directing man what to choose, and what to reject. Without conscience, freewill would be a most dangerous gift. Conscience, like freewill, is a natural gift, which everyone possesses. But conscience needs educating and enlightening, otherwise it may deceive us. We often see persons acting conscientiously, yet acting wrongly. It is the work of grace and truth to enlighten and direct the conscience, and to strengthen the will to follow its dictates. Truth is the light of God illuminating the conscience, and grace is the power of God bracing the will to obey the truth.

For the enlightenment of conscience, God has made known His law of right and wrong. We know the law of right and wrong as the *Moral Law*. The Moral Law is contained in the Ten Commandments. There is no wrong of any kind against which the Commandments do not warn us; and there is no duty either towards God or man, which may not be implied from them.

The Commandments were given on two occasions by God Himself, and each time from a mount. It was on Mount Sinai that He delivered the Moral Law to Moses to teach to the chosen people. It was in the Sermon on the Mount, that Jesus Christ again laid down the Divine Law, giving it a fuller and wider meaning. The chosen people received the Law of God written on two tables of stone. Christians have received the law of love written by the Holy Ghost in their minds and hearts (*Heb. viii. 10*). Our Lord's explanation of the Ten Commandments is found in the fifth, sixth, and seventh chapters of the Gospel according to St. Matthew.

There are two ways of regarding the Commandments. They are to be regarded as *positive* and as *negative* at the same time; that is to say, each of the Commandments enjoins as well as forbids, teaching both what is to be done, and what is not to be done. "Thou shalt" implies also, "Thou shalt not;" and "Thou shalt not" implies "Thou shalt." By this is meant that where a vice is forbidden, the opposite virtue is enjoined; and where a virtue is commanded, the opposite vice is condemned. It is to be observed that although the Commandments were originally given to a nation, yet each of them is addressed to individuals. "*Thou shalt*," or "*Thou shalt not*." By this we are taught that the keeping of the Commandments is a personal matter, in which each soul is concerned.

God's Law is not an arbitrary law. It could not have been other than it is, because the distinction which it points out between right and wrong is an eternal distinction, rooted in the

Being of God Himself. The Moral Law is a reflection of the holy will of God. He does not call upon us to keep the Commandments merely because He bids us, and for no other reason; but there is a just and good cause for what He enjoins, and for what He forbids. The whole law of God by which we are bound, is contained in the principle of love. "Love is the fulfilling of the law."<sup>1</sup> The Commandments are laid down for our good, and the highest good to which we can attain is to love God with all our hearts, and to love our neighbour as ourselves. We shew our love to God by keeping His Commandments. If we break them we can only come to grievous harm: He has bidden us "to keep the commandments of the Lord, and His statutes, which I command thee this day for THY GOOD."<sup>2</sup> Our Blessed Lord has added,—"If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments."<sup>3</sup> The Ten Commandments form our rule of life, they are as the hedges at the road side, to keep us in the right path of the love of God and man, and to save us from trespassing on forbidden ground. Of the just man it is written, "The law of his God is in his heart: and his goings shall not slide."<sup>4</sup> "He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father."<sup>5</sup>

The Ten Commandments represent man's duty towards God, and his duty towards his neighbour, as expressed in our Catechism.

<sup>1</sup> Rom. xiii. 10.<sup>2</sup> Deut. x. 13.<sup>3</sup> St. Matt. xix. 17.<sup>4</sup> Ps. xxxvii 32.<sup>5</sup> St. John xiv. 21.

*Duty towards God.*

My duty towards God, is to believe in Him, to fear Him, and to love Him with all my heart, with all my mind, with all my soul, and with all my strength ; to worship Him, to give Him thanks, to put my whole trust in Him, to call upon Him, to honour His holy Name and His Word, and to serve Him truly all the days of my life.

*Duty towards man.*

My duty towards my Neighbour, is to love him as myself, and to do to all men, as I would they should do unto me : To love, honour, and succour my father and mother : To honour and obey the Queen, and all that are put in authority under her : To submit myself to all my governors, teachers, spiritual pastors and masters : To order myself lowly and reverently to all my betters : To hurt nobody by word nor deed : To be true and just in all my dealing : To bear no malice nor hatred in my heart : To keep my hands from picking and stealing, and my tongue from evil-speaking, lying, and slandering : To keep my body in temperance, soberness, and chastity : Not to covet nor desire other men's goods ; but to learn and labour truly to get

mine own living, and to do my duty in that state of life, unto which it shall please God to call me.

## I. SIN.

Sin is of two kinds,—original and actual. Of the former we have already spoken (see page 149). We will now speak of actual sin. Actual sin is the breaking of the commandments of God. “Sin” says St. John, “is the transgression of the law.”<sup>1</sup> The word transgression, signifies the passing the boundary line which divides right from wrong. The sinner passes over from the side of God to that of the devil, and so becomes a traitor and a rebel.

St. Augustine says,—“Sin is something said, or done, or desired in contradiction to the Eternal Law.” Thus, the commandments may be broken in thought, word, or deed. We should remember, as Dr. Liddon teaches, that “Sin, to be complete, need not become speech or action; a formed desire, deliberately assented to by the will, constitutes sin.” Sin has its root in the will. We may sin by omission as well as by commission, i.e. by not doing the right, as well as by doing the wrong.

Sin darkens the mind, pollutes the heart, weakens the will, and separates us from God. Sin, if persevered in, ends in death. “Sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death.”<sup>2</sup>

Sins may be either venial or deadly. St. John so teaches when he speaks of “a sin not

<sup>1</sup> 1 St. John iii. 4.

<sup>2</sup> St. James i. 15.

unto death," and of "a sin unto death."<sup>1</sup> A venial sin is as the cooling of friendship, a deadly sin is as the breaking of friendship, between the soul and God. Venial sin is more of the nature of infirmity, whilst in deadly sin there is an element of wilfulness. The amount of evil-will exercised is the measure of the greatness of a sin.

Our Blessed Redeemer died to win pardon for the sins of all men; but before we can receive His merciful pardon we must repent; and true repentance is godly sorrow, leading to truthful confession, and firm purpose of amendment. Of repentance for sin we shall read in the following chapter (see page 268).

## II. A LIST OF

### SINS AGAINST THE TEN COMMANDMENTS.

i. Allowed love of another to interfere with my duty to God. Allowed the love of the world, pleasure, money, to gain possession of my heart. Acted against conscience for the sake of money. Taken an irreligious place for the sake of money. Done wrong things to please others. Left right things undone for fear of man. Resisted good impulses. Followed my own will rather than God's will. Been ashamed of my religion. Preferred my own opinion to the teaching of the Church. Encouraged thoughts of unbelief. Pretended to be religious to gain the good opinion of the Clergy and others. Thought religion to be troublesome. Sinned lightly, thinking repentance easy. Persevered in sin. Delayed to repent. Despaired

<sup>1</sup> 1 St. John v. 16.



of God's mercy. Murmured against God's Providence. Complained in affliction. Been unthankful. Been proud. Been guilty of self-seeking. Sought to be noticed, flattered, admired. Refused to own my faults. Been impatient of what humbled me.

ii. Omitted my morning or evening prayers. Said them carelessly, thinking of other things. Shortened my prayers through not getting up in time. Neglected self-examination. Omitted to use Confession when I knew I needed it. Neglected the reading of the Holy Bible. Neglected Holy Communion. Received Holy Communion from an unworthy motive, in a state of unrepented sin, when out of charity with others. Received Holy Communion without due preparation, not discerning the Lord's Body and Blood. Not made my thanksgiving after Communion. Gone to church to see and meet people, to exhibit my dress, or for appearance sake, and not to worship God. Not joined in the worship with heart and voice. Neglected acts of reverence in church. Stared about in church. Gone to sleep wilfully in church. Talked, whispered during service unnecessarily. Been irreverent in church when no service was going on. Gone to places of worship not belonging to the Church. Neglected to say Grace before and after meals. Not thanked God for His daily mercies.

iii. Cursed. Used foul language. Called bad names. Used holy words and names lightly. Quoted Holy Scripture irreverently. Repeated riddles, jokes, founded on Holy Scripture. Joked on religious subjects. Argued about religion in an unbecoming spirit. Argued about

religion with unfit persons. Been disrespectful to God's Ministers. Despised religion in others. Ridiculed others for acts of reverence. Broken rules I have made. Promised to keep a wrong secret. Made rash promises. Taken a false oath. Wilfully kept back something in Confession. Slurred over a sin to avoid the full shame of it.

iv. Not kept Sunday holy. Not been to church regularly on Sundays. Not taken pains to be present at the Holy Eucharist on Sundays and Festivals, when I might have been. Neglected the Holy Days and Fast Days of the Church. Broken Holy Days by excess of eating, excess of merrymaking. Failed to practise self-denial on Fast Days. Worked needlessly on Sunday. Caused others to work on Sunday. Kept back others from going to Church. Spent money on Sunday without good cause. Sold things on Sunday. Wasted time. Neglected opportunities of doing good.

v. Disobeyed those set over me. Been wanting in respect to my superiors. Failed in duty to my parents, parish priest. Not helped my parents in time of need. Neglected the advice of my parents, elders. Been unwilling to learn from the Clergy what was needful for my soul. Neglected my duties to sisters, brothers, relations. Failed in my duties to wife, husband. Been inconsiderate to old people, or to children. Been rude or unkind to others. Neglected my duties to those placed under me. Been harsh to those placed under me. Judged the rich or those placed above me hardly. Broken the laws of the Church. Broken the laws of the land.

vi. Committed murder. Tried to commit suicide. Threatened to commit suicide. Wished I was dead. Hated others. Borne malice in my heart. Wished evil to others. Wished that others were dead. Been angry without a cause. Been quick to take offence. Refused to be friends with others. Been sullen, hasty, passionate, irritable, peevish. Given way to impatience with others. Quarrelled with others. Struck others in anger. Spoken ill-naturedly, spitefully. Abused others. Been glad to hear evil of others. Made others angry. Been a mischief-maker. Not tried to be a peace-maker. Been jealous. Been revengeful. Threatened others. Given way to mean, petty thoughts of others. Ridiculed old age, infirmity. Been unsympathising. Been cruel to animals. Not tried to stop others from sinning. Led others to sin by my bad example, my advice. Prevented others from doing right by laughing at them, by my advice.

vii. Given way to impure thoughts. Done that which would excite wrong impulses. Been curious to enquire into that which was contrary to perfect modesty. Not kept a guard over my eyes. Listened willingly to immodest conversation. Joined in immodest conversation. Read the Holy Bible with impure motive. Read impure books, or immodest accounts in newspapers. Been immodest in manner. Allowed myself too great familiarity with others. Allowed others to be too free with me. Sung indelicate songs. Delighted in bad jests. Used words with double meanings. Used indelicate language. Written impure words. Been to places where indecent sights were exhibited. Tempted others to impurity in thought,

word, deed. Secretly done that which I should be ashamed of others knowing. Committed indecent acts alone. Gone with bad companions. Put myself in the way of temptation. Committed the sin of fornication, or adultery. Eaten and drunk too much. Been dainty, luxurious, self-indulgent. Committed the sin of drunkenness. Been lazy. Neglected self-denial. Been over-fond of dress. Been vain of my looks. Spent too much time and money on dress. Neglected cleanliness.

viii. Stolen money. Been dishonest in little things. Given away what did not belong to me. Received stolen goods. Not restored what I have stolen. Not sought the owner of lost property. Not returned what I have borrowed. Not been perfectly straightforward in money matters. Been guilty of gambling. Not returned what was given me by mistake. Cheated others. Not paid my debts. Run into debt without prospect of being able to repay. Obtained money, credit, under false pretences. Been extravagant. Evaded taxes. Not given God his due in the matter of almsgiving. Been stingy. Hoarded money. Given insufficient wages. Injured the property of others, or the good name of others. Not restored my neighbour's good name when I have injured it. Been idle. Undertaken work for which I was unfitted. Taken credit due to others.

ix. Told lies. Made false excuses. Not been strictly truthful. Added to the truth for my own honour, to excite interest. Exaggerated stories in repeating them. Taken from the truth to serve my own purposes. Not been as good as my word. Acted lies. Been deceitful. Laid my faults on others. Allowed others to

be accused of my faults without speaking. Broken promises. Revealed secrets entrusted to me. Gossiped idly. Told tales. Read other people's letters. Listened to what was not meant for me to hear. Committed forgery. Pretended to be worse than I am. Not owned my sins when charged with them. Boasted. Flattered others. Spoken ill of others. Taken a delight in publishing their faults. Put an evil meaning on the words and deeds of others. Been suspicious, over-curious, distrustful.

x. Been discontented. Murmured. Been fretful. Wished for that which God has not given me. Envied others their talents or possessions. Coveted that which belonged to another. Spoken evil of those better off than myself. Not tried to do my best where God has placed me. Allowed myself to be dependent on others for what I ought to do myself. Desired another's hurt, death, so that I might be a gainer by it. Been greedy of praise, notice, advancement, consideration.

### III. THE THREE NOTABLE DUTIES.

The three notable duties are,—PRAYER, FASTING, and ALMSGIVING. They are so named because they are specially enjoined by Christ our Lord in the Sermon on the Mount.

“When thou doest thine alms . . . .”

“When thou prayest . . . .”

“When ye fast . . . .”<sup>x</sup>

Dr. Pusey writes,—“Fasting, Prayer, and Almsgiving,—that is, denial of self, love of others, and devotion to God, are the three

<sup>x</sup> St. Matt. vi. 2, 5, 16.

heads under which our Lord brings all Christian duties."

In the practice of these three duties lies our safety from the three enemies of the soul.

Prayer delivers us from the Devil.

Fasting subdues the Flesh.

Almsgiving loosens the hold of the World.

It is not uncommon for Christians who pray to omit the kindred duties of Fasting and Almsgiving. This is wrong, for our Lord has coupled them with Prayer; and Fasting and Almsgiving are the wings of Prayer.

## i. PRAYER.

Our Lord teaches that, "men ought always to pray," and the Apostle adds, "pray without ceasing." St. Augustine interprets these commands to continual prayer saying,—“He prays always, who prays at fixed intervals.”

The devout layman should strive to pray thrice a day, however brief the mid-day prayer may be. The priest must pray more frequently. Bishop Andrewes writes,—“Men, as they are Christian, ought to pray three times a day, as David, ‘In the evening, and morning, and at noon-day will I pray, and that instantly,’<sup>1</sup> but as they are prophets and have special charge, they must pray seven times a day as the same David, ‘Seven times a day do I praise thee.’”<sup>2</sup>

The ancient order of these seven times of prayer, termed the Canonical Hours, commemorate the sufferings of our Lord.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. lv. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. cxix. 164.

“At *mattins* bound, at *prime* reviled,  
Condemned to death at *tierce*,  
Nailed to the Cross at *sexts*, at *nones*  
His blessed side they pierce.

They take Him down at *vesper*-tide,  
In grave at *compline* lay :  
Who thenceforth bids His Church observe  
The sevenfold hours alway.”<sup>1</sup>

It is from *mattins* and *prime*, and from *vespers* and *compline*, that the offices of *Mattins* and *Evensong* in the Prayer Book are compiled.

On the subject of Prayer, the reader is referred to page 277 of this work.

## ii. FASTING.

Fasting is literally abstinence from food and drink ; but in a secondary sense it includes all forms of self-denial. The object of fasting is that the flesh may be subdued to the spirit ; in other words, that the body may become an apt and willing minister of the soul. The purpose of fasting is not to distress the body, but to set free the soul. St. Basil writes,—“That man is free whose flesh is controlled by the law of the mind, and whose mind is governed by God.”

Fasting, or self-denial, aids us in resisting temptation. If we are able to deny ourselves in things lawful, we shall be better able to deny ourselves in things unlawful.

St. Basil writes again,—“Our fasting should be accompanied with abstinence from evil ; we must fast from our passions and vices : without this, bodily fasting is unprofitable. Take heed that you make not your fasting to consist only

<sup>1</sup> Neale, *Essays on Liturgiology*, &c., p. 6.

in abstinence from meats. True fasting is to refrain from vice."

The Bible again and again lays down the duty of fasting, the Church tells us when to practise it.

"The Bible bids us fast,  
The Church says *now*."

GEORGE HERBERT.

The Church of England gives, in the Prayer Book, a list of Fasts and Days of Abstinence, which will be found in the Appendix at page 375. She leaves it to the conscience of each as to how this Scriptural practice is to be carried out. With certain exceptions, fasting before Communion is, as we shall see later on, the rule of the whole Church.

### iii. ALMSGIVING.

Almsgiving is the giving of money, goods, or time to the special service of God. The principle upon which Almsgiving rests is contained in the words of David, "All things come of Thee, and of Thine own have we given Thee."<sup>1</sup> The practice of giving alms is a recognition of the sovereignty of God. By making a definite return of our substance to Him, we acknowledge that all we have is His.

It was the rule of the Jews to give one tenth of the year's produce to the service of God. Christians are bound to give alms in a systematic manner, according as God has blessed them. Almsgiving is a great safeguard against "the love of money (which) is a root of all kinds of evil."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> I Chron. xxix. 14.

<sup>2</sup> I Tim. vi. 10, R.V.



## IV. THE THREE THEOLOGICAL VIRTUES.

FAITH, HOPE, and CHARITY, are called theological virtues, because God is the object of these virtues. Faith has for its object the truth revealed by God. Hope has for its object the gifts bestowed on us by God. Charity has for its object God Himself.

i. FAITH is the gift of God, the virtue infused into our souls, by which we firmly believe all that God has revealed and made known to us through the Scriptures, as they are interpreted by the Church. Faith rests upon the truthfulness of God.

ii. HOPE is the gift of God, the virtue by which we expect that God will give us all things which are necessary to bring us to eternal life. Hope rests on the promises, the mercy, and the power of God.

iii. CHARITY is the gift of God, the virtue by which we love God above all things, because He is infinitely good, and our neighbour as ourselves for His sake. Charity rests on the infinite goodness of God, and grows by thankfulness for His love. "We love Him, because He first loved us."<sup>1</sup>

## V. THE FOUR CARDINAL VIRTUES.

i. PRUDENCE is the virtue of the understanding, which teaches us what to do, and what to avoid. It chooses right ends, and the best means of attaining them.

ii. JUSTICE is the virtue of the will, by which we render to all their dues, and so regulate all our conduct towards others.

<sup>1</sup> 1 St. John iv. 19.

iii. TEMPERANCE is the virtue which enables us to control ourselves ; it teaches us to make a right use of our senses and desires, and of all God's gifts and creatures.

iv. FORTITUDE is the virtue which makes us brave in God's service, and enables us to overcome difficulties in the path of duty.

## VI. THE PRECEPTS OF THE CHURCH.

*(After Bishop Cosin.<sup>1</sup>)*

i. To observe the Festivals and Holy-days appointed.

ii. To keep the Fasting-days with devotion and abstinence.

iii. To observe the Ecclesiastical Customs and Ceremonies established, and that without frowardness or contradiction.

iv. To repair unto the public service of the Church for Mattins and Evensong, with other holy offices at times appointed, unless there be a just and unfeigned cause to the contrary.

v. To receive the Blessed Sacrament of the Body and Blood of Christ with frequent devotion, and three times a year at least, of which Easter to be always one. And for better preparation thereunto, as occasion is, to disburden and quiet our consciences of those sins that may grieve us, or scruples that may trouble us, to a learned and discreet Priest, and from him to receive advice, and the benefit of absolution.

<sup>1</sup> John Cosin was bishop of Durham from 1660-1672, and had much to do with the compilation and arrangement of the Book of Common Prayer.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE SACRAMENTS.

THE subject of the Sacraments is closely connected with that of the Incarnation and the Atonement, for the Sacraments are nothing less than the Divinely-appointed means through which the benefits of these mysteries are applied to our souls. The Sacraments are the Divinely-ordered channels by which the spiritual forces of the Incarnation reach us.

#### i.

Neither the Bible nor the Creeds say that the Son of God was made *a man*. The Gospel teaches us that "the Word was made Flesh," and the Nicene Creed that He was "made Man." The distinction is great and important. It was not *a man*, but *Manhood* that the Son of God united to Himself in the womb of the Blessed Virgin Mary. It was not *a human person*, but *Human Nature* that He assumed in the Incarnation.

When God said,—“Let us make Man in our image, after our likeness,”<sup>1</sup> He was speaking of the whole human race, as well as of the first man. This is clear, for He added,—“and let *them* have dominion.” This is taught again

<sup>1</sup> Gen. i. 26.

in Gen. v. 2, where we read, "Male and female created He them, . . . and called *their name Adam*." It is not, "Let us make a man, and call his name Adam," but, "Let us make Man, and call their name Adam." The creation of Man was the creation of a series, of which the first man then made was but the beginning. Thus the whole human family, including ourselves, was in Adam from the very first. Out of him was taken Eve, the mother of all living, and then gradually the whole human race.

For this reason, when Adam sinned, all mankind sinned in him; when he fell, all fell in him; when he died, all died in him. This is a great truth, and it is plainly taught by St. Paul, who says,—“By one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned. . . . By one man's offence death reigned by one. . . . By the offence of one judgment came upon all men. . . . By one man's disobedience many were made sinners.”<sup>1</sup> Thus through the fall of Adam, a fatal spell is cast over all his posterity.

## ii.

It was to break this spell and to set us free, that the Son of God became Incarnate. He Who created the human race at the beginning, came to rescue it from its fallen state. He called Himself “the Son of Man,” not “the son of a man,” because, through His Virgin-birth, He had no man for His father. He came to be the second Adam, the new head of the race through Him redeemed.

<sup>1</sup> Rom. v. 12 to end.

To break the tie which binds us to the first Adam in his fallen state, and to be placed in the ranks of the second Adam, in this lies our only hope of deliverance from the evil spell which our union with the first Adam has cast over us. "For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive."<sup>1</sup> We must get out of connection with the first man into connection with the second Man, the Lord from heaven. We must destroy the old relationship and form a new one. We must transfer our allegiance from Adam to Christ. We must break correspondence with the one, and place ourselves in correspondence with the other. In short, we need to escape from a natural into a supernatural state,—the state of grace.

How is this great change to be accomplished? How is so mighty a transfer to be wrought? The answer is,—By means of the Sacraments which Christ ordained for this very purpose. Sacraments are "effectual signs of grace," they effect what they signify; by them God "doth work invisibly in us."<sup>2</sup> The Sacraments lift us out of our natural state, and place us in, and keep us in, a supernatural state,—the state of grace. Hence the Sacraments are commonly called *the Means of Grace*. The Sacraments place us in living union with Jesus Christ, from Whose sacred Humanity all grace flows. But to receive the Sacraments savingly, the soul must approach them with faith and repentance; for they who receive unworthily, place a bar to the flow, and to the reception, of grace.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> I Cor. xv. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Art. XXV.

<sup>3</sup> In the case of infants, no bar is found to the reception of grace in baptism, since they are guilty neither of unbelief nor of actual sin.

## iii.

The term *sacrament* has been used in a wider sense than that which we now attach to it. St. Augustine defines a sacrament to be "a sacred sign," and speaks of "the sacrament of the Creed, which they ought to believe; the sacrament of the Lord's Prayer, how they ought to ask." Anything of which it could be said,—'This possesses an inward power, or a hidden meaning,' was termed a sacrament. But by degrees, the term *sacrament* was restricted to seven ordinances. Some of these owe their existence to our Lord's direct institution, as recorded in the Gospels; others to the Apostles acting, we may believe, under unrecorded commands of Christ.<sup>1</sup>

The Two Greater Sacraments are named:—

- i. HOLY BAPTISM.
- ii. THE HOLY EUCHARIST.

The Five Lesser Sacraments are named:—

- iii. CONFIRMATION.
- iv. PENANCE.
- v. HOLY ORDER.
- vi. HOLY MATRIMONY.
- vii. UNCTION.

Our Lord's authority can be traced directly for the institution of Holy Baptism, the Holy Eucharist, Holy Order, and Penance. Matrimony, instituted by God from the beginning, was raised by our Lord to a higher dignity; whilst the expression "in the name of the Lord," used by St. James<sup>2</sup> of Unction, compared with St. Mark vi. 13, points to His authority for this Sacrament also. Although there is no record

<sup>1</sup> See Acts i. 3.

<sup>2</sup> v. 14.

of the institution of Confirmation in the New Testament, yet we have the highest reasons for believing that it was ordered by our Lord Himself before His Ascension. Confirmation conveys the fulness of the gift of the Holy Ghost, which no rite of the Church's appointing could do without Divine authority.

The Sacraments of Baptism and the Eucharist claim special attention, for our Lord has given them a peculiar prominence. They are the instruments of INWARD LIFE, according to our Lord's declaration, that Baptism is THE NEW BIRTH, and that in the Eucharist we eat THE LIVING BREAD. They are sometimes called "the Sacraments of the Gospel," because they have their visible sign or ceremony ordained by Christ in the Gospels.

On His authority the Church has ever held them to be "generally necessary to salvation" (i.e. for all men in general, without exception), where they can possibly be had. On the plain testimony of our Lord, no one can hope for salvation, who wilfully neglects to use the means of receiving it.

The Church of England does not teach that there are two Sacraments only, but that there are "two only as generally (or universally) necessary to salvation." The five lesser Sacraments she acknowledges, but not as generally necessary to salvation. These five Sacraments are not on this account to be set aside as of no importance, for they are in their degree visible signs of invisible grace, and form part of the Divine plan for our safety and perfection, according to our needs or conditions in life.\*

\* "As for the number of them (the Sacraments), if they should be considered according to the exact signification of a

Sacrament, namely, for visible signs, expressly commanded in the New Testament, whereunto is annexed the promise of free forgiveness of sins, and of our holiness and *joining in* Christ, there be but two; namely, Baptism, and the Supper of the Lord. For although Absolution hath the promise of forgiveness of sins, yet by the express word of the New Testament, it hath not this promise *annexed and tied to the visible sign*, which is imposition of hands; for this visible sign is not expressly commanded in the New Testament to be used in Absolution, as the visible signs in Baptism and the Lord's Supper are; and therefore Absolution is *no such Sacrament as Baptism and the Lord's Supper are*, and though the ordering of ministers hath this visible sign and promise, yet it lacks the promise of remission of sins, *as all other Sacraments besides the above-named do*. Therefore neither it *nor any other Sacrament else, be such Sacraments as Baptism and the Communion are*."—*Homily on Common Prayer and Sacraments*.

"It is none of the doctrine of the Church of England that there are two Sacraments only, but that 'two only are generally necessary to salvation.'—*Bishop Jeremy Taylor's Dissuasive from Popery. Of Traditions. Section iii.*

"The proper and certain Sacraments of the Christian Church, common to all, or (in the words of our Church) *generally necessary* to salvation, are but two, Baptism and the Supper of the Lord . . . The rest we retain, though not under the notion of such proper and general Sacraments."—*Archbishop Bramhall's Works. i. p. 36.*





THE BAPTISM OF CHRIST.

*St. Matt. iii. 13 to end.*

## I. HOLY BAPTISM.

In our Lord's conversation with Nicodemus, recorded in St. John iii., He declared a new birth of water and of the Spirit to be a necessity to entrance into His kingdom. Our Lord referred to the Sacrament of Baptism, which had been foreshadowed in His own Baptism, and which He was about to institute before His Ascension in the charge given to the Apostles,—"Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."<sup>1</sup>

Holy Baptism is the initial act of God upon the soul, whereby it is transferred from a natural condition to a state of grace. Hence it is called by Jesus Christ, the new birth. He said "Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God."<sup>2</sup> The kingdom of God here named, is the kingdom of the Incarnation, the realm of grace. By Holy Baptism we are incorporated into the mystical Body of Christ, for we are "baptised into Christ."<sup>3</sup> In this Sacrament, the germ of the new life in Christ is implanted in the soul. "Baptism doth also now save us."<sup>4</sup> It saves us from the ill effects of our natural descent from the first Adam: it places us in a state or condition in which, if we continue, we shall be finally saved.

On this account, it is reasonable to baptise infants, for they cannot too soon be transferred from a natural state to a state of grace. To delay baptism, is to give time and opportunity

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxviii. 19.<sup>2</sup> St. John iii. 5.<sup>3</sup> Gal. iii. 27.<sup>4</sup> 1 St. Peter iii. 21.

for the old nature to grow, and to gain mastery in the soul.

The effect of Baptism is threefold :

1. It remits all sin, original and actual.
2. It bestows sanctifying grace, and endues the soul with the heavenly virtues of faith, hope, and charity.
3. It makes the recipient a member of Christ, the child of God, and an inheritor of the kingdom of heaven.

The use of water symbolises the process of cleansing, and the word "baptism" signifies "washing."<sup>1</sup> St. Paul describes Baptism as "the washing of regeneration," i.e. the cleansing birth.<sup>2</sup>

It is the rule of the Church that persons, on receiving baptism publicly, should make certain solemn promises or vows. The baptismal vows are,—

1. To renounce the devil and all his works,
2. To believe in God, and
3. To serve Him.

The observance of these vows forms man's part in the Baptismal covenant or agreement.

In the case of infants, these promises are made in their name by sponsors or god-parents. God-parents simply promise that the child shall fulfil its part in the Baptismal covenant.

Should a baptised person depart from God by unbelief, or by a course of greivous sin, such an one needs conversion. He cannot be re-baptised, for the soul can only be once "born of water and of the Spirit."

<sup>1</sup> Bede in his *Ecclesiastical History*, describes the baptism of the Northumbrians by Paulinus in the words,—“He washed them with the water of absolution.”

<sup>2</sup> St. Titus iii. 5.

*The Institution of the Holy Eucharist.*



“The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the Communion of the Blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the Communion of the Body of Christ?”— *1 Cor. x. 16.*

## II. THE HOLY EUCHARIST.

i. *The Institution.*

As we have already pointed out, the Sacraments of Baptism and the Eucharist<sup>1</sup> possess a special dignity. Many writers in East and West have seen in the water and the blood which flowed from our Saviour's pierced side, a symbol of these two greater Sacraments. Both were instituted by Him at the close of His life on earth. The institution of the Holy Eucharist took place on the night before He died. The commission to baptise was given immediately before His Ascension. We may thus regard these two greater Sacraments as, in a very sacred sense, our Lord's parting legacy to His Church.

The Holy Eucharist was instituted at the close of the Jewish Passover, which Jesus observed for the last time with His Apostles in an upper room at Jerusalem. The Passover was the annual commemoration of the deliverance of God's people from Egypt. It carried the mind back to that awful night in which the destroying angel slew the first-born in every house in Egypt, which was not marked by the blood of the Passover lamb. It was this visitation which induced the Egyptian king to set the chosen people free. The whole service was a most solemn remembrance, or commemoration before God, of a double deliverance,—from death, and from bondage. It was a deliverance wrought by means of the blood of the paschal

<sup>1</sup> The word *Eucharist*, pronounced *u-ka-ris-t*, means "thanksgiving," and is the name given from the earliest times to the Sacrament of the Body and Blood of Christ.

lamb, which thus became the type of the Precious Blood of Christ, the Lamb of God, to be shed upon the cross for the sins of the world.

As part of the ceremonial of the Passover, it was the custom for each household to eat a lamb with unleavened cakes; a cup of wine and water being handed round at different stages of the feast. At the close of the feast which Jesus was keeping with His twelve Apostles, He took one of the unleavened cakes into His sacred Hands, and breaking it, said,—“Take, eat; this is My Body.” And then blessing the cup, He added,—“Drink ye all of it; for this is My Blood of the New Testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.”<sup>1</sup>

St. Paul, who was not called to be an Apostle, until after our Lord's Ascension, was not present on the solemn occasion of which we are speaking; but our Blessed Lord vouchsafed to him later a special revelation concerning the institution, which he records in these words,—“For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus, the same night in which He was betrayed, took bread; and when He had given thanks, He brake it, and said, Take, eat; this is My Body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of Me. After the same manner also He took the cup, when He had supped, saying, This cup is the New Testament in My Blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of Me. For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till He come. Wherefore, whosoever shall eat this bread, or drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily,

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xxvi. 26, etc.

shall be guilty of the Body and Blood of the Lord.”<sup>1</sup> Thus Jesus our Lord instituted the Holy Sacrament of His Body and Blood, commanding His Apostles and their successors to consecrate bread and wine, as He had done, to be His Flesh and Blood, and to make a perpetual memorial of His death before His Father.

## ii. *The Eucharistic Sacrifice.*

The Holy Eucharist is a feast upon a sacrifice. The Body and the Blood of Christ are first offered to the Eternal Father, and then partaken of by the communicants. This offering is termed by St. Paul “the shewing the Lord’s death.”<sup>2</sup>

In saying “This do in remembrance of Me,” our Lord used words which here really mean,—  
“OFFER THIS AS MY MEMORIAL BEFORE GOD.”

It has often been shewn that the word translated “do,” is very frequently used in the Greek Version of the Old Testament for “offer.” It is so used in the following passages to which the reader may refer for himself: Ex. xxix. 36, 38, 39, 41; Lev. ix. 7, 16, 22: xiv. 19: etc. In each of these places, the word translated “offer,” is the same as that used by our Lord when He said, “Do this.”

The Greek word for “remembrance” has likewise a distinctly sacrificial meaning. It is used but twice in the Old Testament, and but four times in the New. Three times in the New Testament the reference is to the Holy Eucharist. Let us briefly examine the three remaining passages, where the Greek word

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. xi. 23, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 26.

translated "remembrance" is used apart from the Holy Eucharist. By this means, we shall best discover our Lord's meaning in speaking of this Sacrament as a "remembrance" of Himself.

In Lev. xxiv. 5, 6, 7, we read,—“And thou shalt take fine flour, and bake twelve cakes thereof, . . . and thou shalt set them in two rows . . . upon the pure table before the Lord. And thou shalt put pure frankincense upon each row, that it may be on the bread for a memorial, even an offering made by fire unto the Lord.” This passage relates to the shewbread, which was placed out of sight of the people in the Holy Place. The twelve cakes were to be for a memorial before the Lord, not for a memorial before man. God said,—“Thou shalt set upon the table shewbread before Me alway.”<sup>1</sup> The purpose of the twelve cakes of the shewbread, was to present before God the twelve tribes, which formed His chosen people. The word translated “memorial,” is the same as that used by our Lord when He said,—“This do in remembrance of Me.”

In Numbers x. 10, we read,—“In the day of your gladness, and in your solemn days, and in the beginnings of your months, ye shall blow with the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings; that they may be to you for a memorial before your God: I am the Lord your God” (see also verse 9). The word here translated “memorial” is the same as that used by our Lord, and translated “remembrance.” It is used of a memorial, not before man, but before God.

<sup>1</sup> Ex. xxv. 30.



In Heb. x. 3, we read,—“But in those sacrifices there is a remembrance again made of sins every year.” The allusion is to the sacrifices offered yearly on the Day of Atonement. These sacrifices were offered to God, to procure pardon of the sins of the priesthood and of the nation. The high priest entered the Holy of Holies, where, unseen by man, he made “a remembrance of sins” before God. The same word is again used.

We have now examined the only three passages in the Bible in which the Greek word for “remembrance” is found, apart from the accounts of the institution of the Holy Eucharist. In each case it is used of A REMEMBRANCE BEFORE GOD, AND NOT BEFORE MAN; and it is only reasonable therefore to suppose that in those instances in which it is used of the Holy Eucharist, it is intended to express the same meaning which it has elsewhere in Holy Scripture, viz.; that of A MEMORIAL BEFORE GOD. That this is the true idea is confirmed by St. Paul’s words spoken of the Holy Eucharist,—“For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord’s death till He come.”<sup>1</sup> In connection with this important subject the reader is asked to refer to what was said on pages 195, 196, concerning the relation which exists between the Eucharistic Sacrifice and our Lord’s pleading in heaven.

The Church of England, in the thirty first Article, condemns certain false ideas concerning the Eucharistic Sacrifice. This condemnation needs careful explanation, for it has formed the

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. xi. 26.

ground of unfair charges against her teaching. The Article is thus worded,—

“The sacrifices of Masses, in the which it was commonly said, that the priest did offer Christ for the quick and the dead, to have remission of pain or guilt, were blasphemous fables, and dangerous deceits (literally, impostures).”

In the middle ages three false ideas had gained ground in reference to the Eucharistic Sacrifice, and it is to these that the Article refers.

(1). The Eucharistic Sacrifice had come to be regarded as a sacrifice distinct from that of our Lord upon the cross, or as a repetition of that Sacrifice. This is alluded to in the Article, where it speaks of “the sacrifices (plural) of Masses, in the which it was commonly said, that the priest did offer Christ.”

(2). It was believed that the Sacrifice of the cross only availed to obtain pardon of birth-sin, whilst the Eucharistic Sacrifice was regarded as the means of obtaining pardon of actual sin.

(3). It was commonly believed that souls in the intermediate state were in torment, from which the offering of the Eucharistic Sacrifice delivered them. Each Eucharist being regarded as a distinct act of sacrifice, possessing its own independent value, it followed that the oftener the Eucharist was offered, the sooner would such suffering come to an end. It is easy to see how this idea appealed to the feelings of survivors, and how the obtaining of Masses for the dead, depending as it did upon money payments, encouraged a traffic in holy things. It is this traffic in Masses for such an end, which is denounced in the Article as a dangerous deceit or imposture. Masses thus purchased were, for the most part, offered in private,

with no communicants present, and are called 'solitary masses.'

In commenting upon the Thirty-first Article, Dr. Pusey says,—“The very strength of the expressions used of ‘the sacrifices of Masses’ that ‘they were blasphemous fables and dangerous deceits,’ the use of the plural, and the clause ‘in the which it was commonly said,’ show that what the Article speaks of is not ‘the sacrifice of the Mass,’ but the habit (which as one hears from time to time, still remains) of trusting to the purchase of Masses when dying, to the neglect of a holy life, or repentance, and the grace of God and His mercy in Christ Jesus, while in health.”<sup>1</sup>

(1). When we speak of the Holy Eucharist as a sacrifice, we do not understand any repetition of the Sacrifice of the cross, or any renewal of Christ's sufferings or death. His sufferings and His death took place once for all, and can never be repeated. Neither are we to suppose that anything is wanting in His sufferings or Sacrifice, which the Eucharistic Sacrifice supplies. But we mean that in the Holy Eucharist we plead before God the One Sacrifice offered once upon the cross, even as Christ Himself presents the same Offering in Heaven. Thus the Fathers spoke of the Holy Eucharist as “the unbloody sacrifice.” The Eucharistic Sacrifice is not so much on a line with the Sacrifice on Calvary, as with the pleading of that Sacrifice in heaven.

(2.) Our Blessed Lord's Sacrifice upon the cross is “a full, perfect, and sufficient sacrifice, oblation, and satisfaction, for the sins of the

<sup>1</sup> *Eirenicon*, I., pp. 25, 26.

whole world,"—not only for birth-sin, but for all actual sin.

(3.) That souls in the intermediate state are benefited by the offering of the Eucharistic Sacrifice, has always been believed in the Church. St. Augustine speaks of "the Sacrifice of our Ransom" being offered on behalf of his departed mother. Our Lord's death upon the cross was for all men, throughout all time, and the Eucharistic pleading of that death avails for all the Church, whether on earth or in paradise. As we have already said, there is not one of the Primitive Liturgies which does not contain prayers for the departed in union with the shewing forth of the Lord's death in the Eucharist. In celebrating the Eucharist, the English Church prays that "we and all Thy whole Church may obtain remission of our sins, and all other benefits of His Passion." The living compose but a small part of "all the whole Church," the greater part of the Church being in the intermediate state.

"The Sacrifice of the Mass" must be distinguished from "the sacrifices of Masses" of which the Article speaks. The latter expression refers to the erroneous idea that it was the *number* of masses which was the source of benefit to the departed. For example, a medieval legend represents a certain bishop hearing a soul in purgatory say that he should be delivered, if, for thirty days following, the bishop would say thirty masses for him. The idea condemned is that of the value of *many masses*, as separate acts of sacrifice independent of the Sacrifice of the cross, in contradistinction to the truth that each Mass is but a continuous memorial and representation of the One Sacri-

fice, deriving all its power from that One Sacrifice. The idea condemned is that of cumulation and repetition, independent of the One and only-availing Sacrifice of Calvary.

The Sacrifice of the Mass, or Eucharistic Sacrifice, understood in its ancient and Catholic sense as "the continual remembrance of the sacrifice of the death of Christ,"<sup>1</sup> the Church of England has never disowned. She could not disown it, without forfeiting her claim to be a portion of the Holy Catholic Church of Christ. The word *mass*, which is of uncertain origin, was retained in the first reformed Prayer Book of Edward the VI.'s reign. The title of the Eucharistic Office ran,—“The Supper of the Lorde and the Holy Communion, commonly called the Masse.”

There is an objection in many minds to the use of this term, from its association with the errors to which we have referred. But the name is primitive, being used by St. Ambrose as far back as the year 385, long before the Catholic doctrine of the Eucharistic Sacrifice had been corrupted by medieval additions. When the true doctrine of the Eucharistic Sacrifice is more perfectly understood amongst us, the term Mass, from its very convenience, will probably reassert itself.

The reason why the Sacrificial aspect of the Holy Eucharist is not more fully recognised in the Prayer Book is, that the idea of Communion, which was a primary purpose of our Lord in giving us the Holy Sacrament, had in the middle ages fallen into the background.

<sup>1</sup> The Church Catechism.

The majority of persons received but once a year, and six times a year was considered a large allowance for devoted women in the Religious Houses. In restoring the idea of the importance of Communion, and as a revulsion from the unhappy teaching of which we have been speaking, the true balance was lost; and in the reaction, the sacrificial aspect of this Great Service was not so fully recognised in drawing up our Eucharistic Office as it might have been. But the use of the Prayer of Consecration by the priest, in which the words and actions of our Lord in instituting the Sacrament are commemorated, in itself constitutes the offering of the Eucharistic Sacrifice. Moreover, in the Prayer of Oblation, we ask God to accept "this our sacrifice of praise and thanksgiving," the old term for the Eucharistic Sacrifice, and go on to speak of the offering of "ourselves, our souls and bodies, to be a reasonable, holy, and lively sacrifice" unto God.<sup>1</sup>

iii. *The Eucharistic Feast,*  
commonly called  
*The Holy Communion.*

Our Blessed Lord ordained the Sacrament of the Eucharist in order that we might be able on earth to plead His Sacrifice before the Face of God, even as He does in heaven. But beyond this, He had a further object in view, and one

<sup>1</sup> "This is the Sacrifice of Christians, the many who are one Body in Christ, which also the Church continually celebrates in the Sacrament of the Altar known to the faithful, where it is shewn to her that in the very Thing which she offers, she herself also is offered." St. Augustine, *De Civitate*, x. 6.

of supreme importance, viz., that He might feed our souls with His Body and Blood.

That we may thus be able to feed upon Him, He has given to His Church authority to consecrate, by the power of His Holy Spirit, bread and wine to become His Body and Blood. When we receive the bread and the wine thus consecrated, we verily and indeed receive His Sacred Flesh and Blood.

This is what is known as the doctrine of the Real Presence. The term *Real Presence* signifies the presence of a Reality. This Reality is the Body and Blood of Christ, present in the Sacrament under the form of bread and wine.\* Our Lord's presence in the Eucharist is a spiritual presence. By a spiritual presence we do not mean something unreal or figurative, but a presence which is not natural or material. Angels are spiritual beings, but none the less real beings. A spiritual presence is a presence of a supernatural kind,—of a higher order than a merely natural presence. Our Blessed Lord is locally present in heaven, He is spiritually present in the Blessed Sacrament.

Holy Communion is thus the most blessed and the most solemn Thing upon earth, it affords the nearest approach to God of which the soul is capable here below. When we come to the Holy Communion we should always remember that we are approaching the Throne of God. The Divine Liturgy of St. James instructs the celebrant to say,—“Not as being worthy, but

\* “The bread, which is produced from the earth, when it receives the invocation of God, is no longer common bread, but the Eucharist, consisting of two realities, earthly and heavenly.” St. Irenæus, *Against Heresies*. Bk. iv. 18, 5.

looking up to Thy Goodness, I address my voice unto Thee. O God be merciful to me a sinner: I have sinned against heaven and before Thee, and am not worthy to present myself before this Thy sacred and spiritual Table, whereon Thine only-begotten Son, and our Lord Jesus Christ, is mystically set forth as a sacrifice for me a sinner.”<sup>1</sup> We should never speak of receiving bread and wine in the Sacrament, but rather of receiving the Body and Blood of Christ which are hidden beneath the bread and wine. The reader may learn much more about the Holy Communion by reading our Lord’s own words about it, recorded in the sixth chapter of the Gospel according to St. John, beginning at the twenty-seventh verse.

#### iv. *Fasting Communion.*

To receive the Holy Communion before taking any other food or drink, has been the custom of the whole Church from the earliest times. It is true that our Lord instituted the Sacrament of His Body and Blood in the evening, at the conclusion of the Jewish Passover. But the Passover was not an ordinary meal; it was the most solemn sacrifice of the Jewish Church. Moreover, both our Lord and His Apostles were fasting when they received it, in accordance with the custom which ordered that “from the time of the evening sacrifice, nothing was to be eaten till the Paschal Supper, so that all might come to it with relish.”<sup>2</sup> The Holy Communion is the Christian Passover, a

<sup>1</sup> Neale’s *Liturgies*, p. 31.

<sup>2</sup> Edersheim, *Temple Service*, p. 203.



feast following a sacrifice, and therefore it was fitting that it should be *instituted* at the conclusion of the last of the long series of Jewish Passovers. Whilst we are bound to copy our Lord closely in the great features of the first celebration of the Holy Eucharist (such as in the use of bread and wine, and the words of consecration), yet there are minor details in which we are not required to do so. For example, our celebrations cannot follow the Jewish Passover, or be held in an upper room at Jerusalem with none but the clergy present. And the hour at which we celebrate need not be the same.

The Jewish Passover was celebrated in the evening, for it was *during the night* that the destroying angel passed over the houses of the Israelites, thus saving them from death. Our deliverance from death was sealed by our Lord's Resurrection, which took place *early in the morning*, and it is therefore fitting that we should celebrate the Christian Passover at the time He rose.

It is true that for a few years after the Ascension, the Eucharist was celebrated in the evening, and in connection with a social meal named the Agapæ or Lovefeast; we know for certain that this was so at Corinth. But the abuses connected with these Evening Communions were so grievous, that the Church soon discouraged them, insisting on the rule that the Body and Blood of Christ should be received only by those who were fasting. It was thought fitting that the heavenly food of the soul should be received before the earthly food of the body. The rapidity with which the change was accomplished, and its universal acceptance, lead to

the conclusion that it was made on the authority of the Apostles themselves. Whilst the hour of celebrating on Sundays and Festivals was early in the morning, it was later on Fast days, sometimes being as late as 3 o'clock in the afternoon; but on every occasion, late as well as early, none but fasting communions were made.

The historical evidence for the practice of Fasting Communion is so continuous and complete, that the Rev. F. W. Puller, who has studied the subject very carefully, is only able to find one exception from the *general rule* of Fasting Communion from the close of the first century to the Reformation,—a period of nearly 1,500 years. This exception was in the case of some Egyptian Christians, who received the Sacrament after supper. Their conduct is mentioned by the historians Socrates and Sozomen in terms of condemnation, and as a breach of an universal rule.

To prove the universality of the rule we quote the words of St. Augustine,—“It clearly appears (from the account in St. Matthew's Gospel) that, when the disciples first received the Body and Blood of the Lord, they did not receive fasting. Must we therefore censure the Universal Church because the Sacrament is always received by persons who are fasting? Nay, verily; for from that time it has seemed good to the Holy Ghost that in honour of so great a Sacrament the Body of the Lord should enter the mouth of a Christian before other food: and it is for this reason that the custom referred to is observed throughout the whole world. For it does not follow that, because the Lord gave the Communion after food, the

brethren should now be bound to assemble after having dined or supped to receive that Sacrament, or, as *they* used to do, whom the Apostle reproves and corrects, to mingle It with their meals. For the Saviour, in order that He might the more urgently commend the depth of that mystery, wished by making this His last act, to imprint it more deeply on the hearts and memory of His disciples, from whom He was about to depart to His Passion: and He did not prescribe in what order It should thenceforth be received, because He wished to reserve this work for His Apostles, through whom He intended to set in order the Churches. For if He had admonished them that this Sacrament should always be received after other food, I believe that no one would have changed that practice. But when the Apostle, speaking of this Sacrament, says:—‘Wherefore, my brethren, when ye come together to eat, tarry one for another: and if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that ye come not together under condemnation:’ he immediately added:—‘And the rest will I set in order when I come.’ Whence we are given to understand that (since it was too much for him to suggest in his Epistle that whole order of proceeding which is observed by the Universal Church throughout the world) the observance which is varied by no diversity of customs was one of the things set in order by the Apostle in person.”<sup>1</sup>

Commenting upon St. Augustine’s words, Canon Bright says,—“From a survey of this passage nothing can be more certain than that St. Augustine regarded the rule of ‘Fasting

<sup>1</sup> *First Letter to Januarius*, Ep. liv., chap. vi.

Communion' as (1) observed by the Church universal; (2) therefore traceable to Apostolic authority, e.g., St. Paul's; and therefore (3) possessing Divine sanction."<sup>1</sup>

Whilst Fasting Communion has thus ever been regarded as the universal rule, certain exceptions have been permitted in cases of sickness or other necessity. Dying persons have always been allowed to receive their last Communion after taking food, and the exception has been extended to those whose bodily infirmities make fasting reception impossible. Whilst "necessity knows no law," yet to break lightly a custom of the Church so universal, is very wrong, and all Church people who hold the Church to be the kingdom of God on earth, should do their utmost to observe her rules. Bishop Jeremy Taylor says,—“It is a Catholic custom, that they who receive the Holy Communion should receive it fasting. This is not a duty commanded by God (i.e. a matter of Divine law): but unless it be necessary to eat, he that despises this custom gives nothing but the testimony of an evil mind.”<sup>2</sup>

It is true that the Church of England does not, in the Book of Common Prayer, expressly enjoin Fasting Communion. But as the rule was in full force when the Prayer Book was first put out in 1549, something surely would have been said if it had been meant that the practice should be discontinued. In an explanation of the Prayer Book, published in 1668, by Bishop Sparrow (one of its revisers,

<sup>1</sup> Note in the reprint of Dr. Liddon's *Evening Communion*, p. 33.

<sup>2</sup> *The Rule of Conscience*, Book iii. chapter iv., Rule 15.

and who must be supposed to have known what was intended), it is expressly said,—“This Sacrament should be received fasting.” Moreover, the Church of England declares in the Preface to the Prayer Book that she has no intention of ‘striking at any laudable practice of the whole Catholic Church of Christ,’—and the custom of Fasting Communion is certainly such a practice. An English Canon of 960 still exists, never having been repealed, which runs,—“We charge that no man take the Housel (the old English word for the Holy Communion) after he hath broken his fast, except it be on account of extreme sickness.”

---

An aged priest, beloved by the author of this book, remembers a case in the County of Durham when, some thirty-three years ago, an invalid far advanced in years received the Blessed Sacrament privately late one afternoon. It was found, to the dismay of those who had arranged the time, that she was fasting, and that she had never dreamed of receiving otherwise. It was a custom which she had inherited from those who went before her, and she had been a communicant all her life.

### III. CONFIRMATION.

Confirmation is the laying on of the bishop's hands upon those who have been baptised, in order that they may be strengthened by the Gift of the Holy Spirit. Thus, it is sometimes named, as in the Prayer Book, “the Laying on of Hands.” It is the belief of the Church that in Confirmation, the Seven Gifts of the Holy Spirit, named in Isa. xi. 2, 3, are in their fulness bestowed upon the soul which rightly approaches this Sacrament.

The Seven Gifts of the Holy Ghost are,—

1. WISDOM, to aid us in our search after God.
2. UNDERSTANDING, to lead us to a knowledge of the truth.
3. COUNSEL, to help us to discern the right path.
4. GHOSTLY STRENGTH, to confirm us in doing right.
5. KNOWLEDGE, to teach us the will of God.
6. TRUE GODLINESS, to help us to lead good lives.
7. HOLY FEAR, to aid us in loving God as our Father.

In the New Testament the Sacrament of Holy Baptism is closely associated with that of Confirmation.

In Acts viii. 12, etc., we read a description of the first occasion on which the Church of Christ was extended beyond the gates of Jerusalem, and thus have an excellent example of how beginners in the Christian religion were then dealt with. St. Philip, a deacon, taught and baptised the Samaritans, but the Apostles must confirm. Two of these chief ministers, at a most busy time in the Church's history, came a journey of forty or fifty miles to lay their hands upon the baptised, that they might receive the Holy Ghost. "Then laid they their hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost."

In Acts xix. 1, etc., we have the record of St. Paul first baptising, and then confirming twelve

persons at Ephesus. "They were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them."

In naming the six rudiments of the doctrine of Christ, the writer of the Epistle to the Hebrews, speaks of "the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands";<sup>1</sup> where the two Sacraments are again coupled together. We have probably a reference to a like association in Acts ii. 38, and in Tit. iii. 5. Thus, Confirmation is believed to be the completion of Baptism. For 1000 years throughout the whole Church Confirmation immediately followed Baptism, even in the case of infants; and this is the present custom of the Eastern Church. In the English Church it is usual to defer Confirmation until children have arrived at years of discretion, and it is accompanied by a renewal of the vows of Baptism.

This renewal of vows is no real part of Confirmation; for Confirmation is a Sacrament which the Church ministers "after the example of the holy Apostles."<sup>2</sup> As we have said, the Apostles administered Baptism and Confirmation together, and in the New Testament we find traces of engagements made at Baptism only. In point of fact, this adjunct of Confirmation has only been in the Prayer Book a little over 200 years. The renewal of vows is a good and edifying accompaniment to Confirmation, though no necessary part of the Sacrament.

Confirmation, like Baptism, can be received but once in a lifetime, since it imprints a character or mark upon the soul which can never be effaced.

<sup>1</sup> vi. 1, 2.

<sup>2</sup> *The Order of Confirmation.*

## IV. PENANCE.

i. *Absolution.*

It has been said,—“The Sacrament of Penitence were not needed, if we ever kept faithfully the gift in Baptism: it is but a second plank given to us by the mercy of God after shipwreck.” Baptism conveys remission of all sins previously committed, but since we can never be baptised a second time, the sacramental cleansing from sin after baptism takes place in Absolution.

The Sacrament we are considering is sometimes named the Sacrament of Absolution, and sometimes that of Penitence or Penance. The word “absolution” signifies “loosing” or “releasing.” Absolution is God’s authoritative declaration whereby the sinner is loosed from the bonds of sin. Penitence is man’s preparation to receive such absolution.

The Sacrament of Absolution was instituted by Jesus Christ after His Resurrection; we give the account in the words of the Gospel. “Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, came Jesus and stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you. And when He had so said, He shewed unto them His hands and His side. Then were the disciples glad, when they saw the Lord. Then said Jesus to them again, Peace be unto you: as My Father hath sent Me, even so send I you. And when He had said this, He breathed on them, and saith unto them, Receive ye the Holy Ghost: whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted



unto them; and whose soever sins ye retain, they are retained."<sup>1</sup>

By these words our Lord constituted the Apostles and their successors the ministers of Absolution. The bestowal of the power to 'retain' as well as to 'remit' sins in His Name, shews that our Lord intended the Church to be the judge of the sinner's penitence. Further, in order that this power may be exercised, it is needful for the sinner seeking forgiveness to open his heart by confession of sin. Such a course, with a view to receiving Absolution, is referred to in the exhortation before Communion in the Prayer Book. The words are,—“If there be any of you, who . . . cannot quiet his own conscience herein, but requireth further comfort or counsel, let him come to me, or to some other discreet and learned minister of God's Word, and open his grief; that by the ministry of God's holy Word he may receive the benefit of absolution, together with ghostly counsel and advice, to the quieting of his conscience, and avoiding of all scruple and doubtfulness.”

As we have already pointed out, our Saviour is the Source of all pardon, but He has been pleased to dispense His pardon through the Ministry of His Church. The Church so realises this truth, that in admitting men to the order of the priesthood, she dwells very specially upon it. In the English Church every priest is admitted to his sacred office by the bishop, who lays his hand upon the priest's head saying,—“Receive the Holy Ghost for the Office and Work of a Priest in the Church of God, now committed unto thee by the Imposi-

<sup>1</sup> St. John xx. 19-24.

tion of our hands. Whose sins thou dost forgive, they are forgiven; and whose sins thou dost retain, they are retained. And be thou a faithful Dispenser of the Word of God, and of His holy Sacraments; in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.”<sup>1</sup>

The Prayer Book speaks three times of the power of Absolution. In Morning and Evening Prayer there is a declaration of this power; in the Communion Office a still stronger expression of it is found; but in the Order for the Visitation of the Sick, we have the form for the actual exercise of the power of Absolution. This last is a most solemn and direct assurance of pardon, since it can only be pronounced after a full confession of sins before the priest. The rubric directs—

*Here shall the sick person be moved to make a special Confession of his sins, if he feel his conscience troubled with any weighty matter. After which Confession, the Priest shall absolve him (if he humbly and heartily desire it) after this sort.*

Our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath left power to His Church to absolve all sinners who truly repent and believe in Him, of His great mercy forgive thee thine offences: And by His authority committed to me, I absolve thee from all thy sins, In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

“The power of remitting sins,” says Bishop Andrewes, “then, is originally in God, and in God alone; in Christ our Saviour, by means of the union of the Godhead and Manhood in one

<sup>1</sup> *The Ordering of Priests*

Person, by virtue whereof the Son of Man hath power to forgive sins upon earth. This of the Apostles is nothing else but a branch out of His, which He Himself, as Man, had here upon earth. For, as Man, He Himself was sent; was anointed with the Spirit; and proceeded by Commission."

If it be objected that it is presumptuous for the priest to say, "I absolve thee from all thy sins," the answer is,—Absolution is the Divinely-appointed means through which God's Forgiveness flows out to the penitent: and it cannot be presumptuous to use the power which Christ has so clearly given to His priests. The words of St. Ambrose may be quoted here—"Why do you baptise, if it is not lawful for men to forgive sins? In baptism there is certainly forgiveness of all sins. What difference is there between exercising the right in penitence or in baptism? The mystery is the same in both cases."

We should remember that the priest in absolving, acts in the name and on the part of the Church. The sentence of Absolution runs,—“Our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath left power to His Church to absolve, etc. . . .” The power of Absolution does not belong to the priest personally, except as ministering on behalf of the Church. The words of St. James<sup>1</sup> concerning forgiveness in connection with Unction bring this out, many being present. In the early centuries Absolution was given publicly to individuals in the churches. Private Absolution was introduced later, to avoid the scandal of open and public confessions of sin.

<sup>1</sup> v. 14, 15.

ii. *Repentance.*

Before a priest can remit sins in this direct and solemn way, it is necessary that he should be assured of the sinner's repentance.

Repentance consists of three parts,—

(1.) CONTRITION.

(2.) CONFESSION.

(3.) AMENDMENT.

(1.) CONTRITION.

The groundwork of a true repentance is contrition. Without contrition, confession is of no avail, and there can be no lasting amendment of life. Contrition is the hatred of sin springing from love of God. The true penitent views sin as an outrage against the love of God; he sees in the Passion and Death of Jesus the work and the result of his sin. Contrition is the breaking of the heart in the thought of God's love, as it is manifested in the Passion. True Contrition places the soul in a state of reconciliation and peace with God.

(2.) CONFESSION.

Contrition leads to confession, or the truthful acknowledgment of sin. By confession the sinner acknowledges his wrong doing to God, as well as brings it home to himself. God demands confession as a condition of pardon. "If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins."<sup>1</sup> A willingness to confess is an evidence of contrition. The most searching confession is that made privately before a priest.

<sup>1</sup> 1 St. John i. 9.

“It is neither prudent nor safe always to rely upon our own judgment of ourselves, for another Eye sees more of us than is discerned by our own. In the dangers of our body we consult the physician, in the intricacies of our estate we advise with the lawyer, and in the care of our immortal souls why do we not advise with our spiritual physicians? for they are appointed by Christ Himself to direct the ignorant, confirm the doubtful, and comfort the disconsolate.

Confession to a priest is with us restored to its Primitive use, for we direct all men always to confess to God, but some also to confess their faults and reveal their doubts to the priest, especially in these three cases:—first, when we are disquieted with the guilt of some sin already committed; or, secondly, when we cannot conquer some lust or passion; or, thirdly, when we are afflicted with any intricate scruples; particularly whether we may now be fit to receive the Blessed Sacrament or no.”<sup>1</sup>

It is only upon such private confession, that the soul can receive the direct assurance of pardon which Christ Jesus empowers the priest to pronounce. The form of confession commonly used in this case is as follows:—

I confess to God the Father Almighty, to His Only Begotten Son Jesus Christ, and to God the Holy Ghost, before the whole company of heaven, and to you my father, that I have sinned exceedingly in thought, word, and deed, by my fault, my own fault, my own most

<sup>1</sup> Dean Comber's *Commentary on the Prayer Book*, published in the year 1684.

grievous fault; especially I confess that I have committed these sins, (*after naming his sins, the penitent will conclude the confession with the words,—*) For these and all my other sins which I cannot now remember, I am heartily sorry, I firmly purpose amendment; I most humbly ask pardon of God; and of you, my spiritual father, I beg for penance, advice, and absolution. Wherefore I pray God the Father Almighty, His Only Begotten Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Ghost to have mercy upon me, and you my father, to pray for me to the Lord our God. Amen.

The Church of England invites sinners who cannot otherwise make their peace with God to open their grief (i.e. to reveal the sin which causes the grief), before the priest, in order that they may secure "the benefit of absolution." Such confession is called by Bishop Cosin *Sacramental Confession*, and is a blessed privilege open to all who heartily desire it. Our Blessed Lord has given His priests power and authority to absolve from all sins, and He surely meant them to use that power. But before they can fully do so, it is needful that those seeking absolution should confess their sins. Thus we may be quite sure that private confession, as an outcome of real contrition, is a practice well pleasing to our Lord.<sup>1</sup>

We must remember that, strictly speaking, to absolve is not to forgive; God alone forgives. To absolve is to unloose the bonds which sin has placed upon the soul, and to remove the bar to the receiving of grace. In raising

<sup>1</sup> See Dr. Pusey's Statement on Sacramental Confession, pp. 352, etc.

Lazarus from the dead, our Lord pronounced the words, "Loose him, and let him go."<sup>1</sup> This was the part of the people towards him whom Christ raised. And so God, Who pardons the penitent, bids the priest in absolution to loose him and let him go.

(3.) AMENDMENT.

Amendment, or Satisfaction as it is sometimes called, is the forsaking of sin. This is the crowning test of genuine repentance, and a sure evidence of real contrition. Amendment is the steadily-sustained resolve to sin no more, and is, in a certain sense, a compensation for past iniquity. In the case of injury done to others, the idea of restitution enters in, as a necessary part of repentance.

V. HOLY ORDER.

The Sacrament of Holy Order gives power and authority to exercise the work of the Ministry in the Church of God. This power and authority proceeds from Jesus Christ, the Divine Head of the Church. He first gave it to the Apostles to hand on to the bishops, and, through the bishops, to the priests of the Church. The bishops only are able to bestow Holy Orders. This they do at the Ember seasons. The Church of England appoints days of fasting at these times, and calls upon her members to ask God's guidance for the bishops in selecting fitting persons for the Ministry of the Church, and His blessing upon such persons. Our Lord Himself spent a whole

<sup>1</sup> St. John xi. 44.

night in prayer before choosing His Apostles ;<sup>1</sup> and before St. Paul and St. Barnabas were sent forth, the Church fasted and prayed.<sup>2</sup> There are two prayers, provided by the Church, to be said every day in the Ember weeks ; one of these we give below ;—

Almighty God, our heavenly Father, Who hast purchased to Thyself an universal Church, by the precious blood of Thy dear Son ; Mercifully look upon the same, and at this time so guide and govern the minds of Thy servants the Bishops and Pastors of Thy flock, that they may lay hands suddenly on no man, but faithfully and wisely make choice of fit persons to serve in the sacred Ministry of Thy Church. And to those which shall be ordained to any holy function give Thy grace and heavenly benediction ; that both by their life and doctrine they may set forth Thy glory, and set forward the salvation of all men ; through Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

The Sacrament of Holy Order, like the Sacraments of Holy Baptism and Confirmation, imprints a mark or character upon those who receive it, which ever remains, and therefore ordination cannot be repeated.

Upon the subject of the Ministry of the Church we have already spoken fully in the First Part of this book.

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke vi. 12, 13.

<sup>2</sup> Acts xiii. 3.



## VI. HOLY MATRIMONY.

Holy Matrimony, or Marriage, is the Sacrament which hallows the union of man and woman, and bestows upon them the grace to live together in godliness and love. Marriage is "an honourable estate, instituted of God in the time of man's innocency," and is described by St. Paul as a "great mystery," and as a type of the union between Christ and His Church.<sup>1</sup>

Marriage is a bond sealed by God, which nothing but death can break. In speaking of this bond, our Lord said,—“For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh. Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.”<sup>2</sup>

Marriage, having this binding force, divorce is contrary to the Divine institution. Unfortunately the State in this land, as in other countries, has placed itself at variance with the law of Christ and of His Church, both in the way in which it permits divorce, and also in sanctioning the marriage of divorced persons. It is true that a difference of opinion exists in the Church, as to the lawfulness of an innocent party re-marrying after separation from a former partner. But the general opinion is, that such separation and such re-marriage are alike contrary to the Divine intention; death alone being regarded as the dissolver of the bond, setting the survivor free to marry again.

When our Lord said,—“Whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of

<sup>1</sup> Eph. v. 32.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matt. xix. 5, 6.

fornication, causeth her to commit adultery: and whosoever shall marry her that is divorced committeth adultery,"<sup>1</sup> it has been thought that He is not referring to unfaithfulness *after* marriage, but to unchastity in the woman *before* marriage, which had not been acknowledged. The Greek word here translated "fornication," is generally used of sin in an unmarried person, and not of unfaithfulness in a wife, for which a different word, translated "adultery," is constantly used. The Jewish law punished with death a bride who thus deceived her husband.

By the laws of the Church, which are based upon the Holy Scriptures, there are certain forbidden degrees of relationship within which marriages are unlawful. A list of these will be found at the end of this book.<sup>2</sup>

The State acknowledges marriage contracted before a Registrar, and such marriage is indissoluble; but for *Christian Marriage*, the benediction of a priest is required.

## VII. UNCTION.

In speaking of the Reformation we said, that whilst the English Church came out of the movement with essentials unimpaired, yet there were certain losses which we need to repair. Of one of these losses, and that a serious one, we must now speak. We refer to the Sacrament of Unction, or the Anointing of the Sick.

Bishop Forbes writes,—“The Unction of the

<sup>1</sup> S. Matt. v. 32 and xix. 9.

<sup>2</sup> See page 376.

Sick is the lost pleiad<sup>1</sup> of the Anglican firmament. One must at once confess and deplore that a distinctly Scriptural practice has ceased to be commanded in the Church of England. Excuses may be made of 'corrupt following of the Apostles,' in that it was used, contrary to the mind of St. James, when all hope of the restoration of bodily health was gone;<sup>2</sup> but it cannot be denied that there has been practically lost an Apostolic practice, whereby, in case of grievous sickness, the faithful were anointed and prayed over, for the forgiveness of their sins, and to restore them, if God so willed, or to give them spiritual support in their maladies. 'Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the Church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord: and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him;'<sup>3</sup> and the Bishop adds,—“Since, however, the Visitation of the Sick is a private office, and uniformity is required only in the public offices, there is nothing to hinder the revival of the Apostolic and Scriptural custom of anointing the sick, whensoever any devout person may desire it.”<sup>4</sup>

The form for such administration is given in the First Prayer Book of Edward VI., ordering

<sup>1</sup> In the cluster of stars known as the Pleiades there were formerly seven stars visible, now there are but six.

<sup>2</sup> It is this abuse which is responsible for the disuse of this Sacrament since the Reformation.

<sup>3</sup> St. James v. 14, 15.

<sup>4</sup> *Explanation of the XXXIX. Articles.* Third Edition, pp. 445, 474.

the oil to be blessed by a bishop: it is as follows,—

*If the sick person desire to be anointed, then shall the Priest anoint him upon the forehead or breast only, making the sign of the cross, saying thus,—*As with this visible oil thy body outwardly is anointed: so our heavenly Father, Almighty God, grant of His infinite goodness, that thy soul inwardly may be anointed with the Holy Ghost, Who is the Spirit of all strength, comfort, relief, and gladness: and vouchsafe for His great mercy (if it be His blessed will) to restore unto thee thy bodily health, and strength, to serve Him; and send thee release of all thy pains, troubles, and diseases, both in body and mind. And howsoever His goodness (by His divine and unsearchable providence) shall dispose of thee: we, His unworthy ministers and servants, humbly beseech the Eternal Majesty—to do with thee according to the multitude of His innumerable mercies, and to pardon thee all thy sins and offences, committed by all thy bodily senses, passions, and carnal affections; Who also vouchsafe mercifully to grant unto thee ghostly strength, by His Holy Spirit, to withstand and overcome all temptations and assaults of thine adversary, that in no wise he prevail against thee, but that thou mayst have perfect victory and triumph against the devil, sin, and death, through Christ our Lord: Who by His death hath overcome the prince of death, and with the Father and the Holy Ghost evermore liveth and reigneth God, world without end. Amen.

## CHAPTER IV.

### PRAYER.

**R**ELIGION is the bond between the soul and God. This bond is one that may be strengthened or weakened as every soul wills. It is weakened, and even broken, by sin ; it is strengthened by prayer. Prayer braces the bond of religion from man's side, and draws down the grace which strengthens it from God's side. Without prayer the soul looses its hold upon God. God soon fades away from the mental vision of those who never pray.

Of all beings here below, man alone prays. In many ways we closely resemble the lower animals, but there is this striking difference between us and them—we can pray, and they cannot do so. The reason for this is, that man has a rational soul, and a beast has not. It is natural to us to pray, for the soul was made for communion with God, just as a key is made to turn in a lock. If we look at the handle, barrel, and wards of a key, we say, This key was made for a purpose ; if we look within ourselves, we can say, My soul was made for God, and to hold communion with Him. When the soul prays, it is doing that for which it was made. This communion with God is called prayer. St. Augustine defines prayer to be “the turning of the heart to God.” St. John Damascene says,—“prayer is the elevation or ascent of the soul to God.” It is not only natural to pray

but God has bidden us do so. There is hardly any subject more continually brought to our notice in the Bible than that of prayer, both by precept and example. The Holy Scriptures give innumerable instances of prayer, frequently telling us the very words used so acceptably to God. Our Blessed Lord is our Great Example, and we often read of His praying in the Gospels, and many of the prayers He said are recorded there. He taught His disciples to pray, and gave them and us the best of all prayers,—the Lord's Prayer. No one can read the Scriptures without learning that prayer is a duty and a necessity, as well as a privilege.

Prayer is the soul's converse with God. When we see a man on his knees we can say, There is one who holds communion with his God. This communion with God in prayer involves much more than the mere asking for certain things. There are five parts of prayer, viz. :

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. Adoration,  | } which concern God's          |
| 2. Thanksgiving,                                     |                                |
| 3. Confession,                                       | } which concern our individual |
| 4. Petition,   |                                |
| 5. Intercession, which concerns the needs of others. |                                |

Prayer teaches and implies our dependence upon God, in Whom "we live, and move, and have our being."<sup>1</sup> Prayer must be offered in faith, and through the merits of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. "What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them."<sup>2</sup> "If ye shall ask anything in My Name, I will do it."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Acts xvii. 28.      <sup>2</sup> St. Mark xi. 24.      <sup>3</sup> St. John xiv. 14.

"We all have to seek God's Face above; we all have souls to be sanctified and saved; we all have sins and passions to beat back and to conquer. And these things are achieved pre-eminently by prayer, which is properly and representatively the action of religion. It is the action whereby we men, in all our frailty and defilement, associate ourselves with our Divine Advocate on high, and realize the sublime bond which in Him, the One Mediator between God and man, unites us in our utter unworthiness to the Strong and All-holy God."<sup>1</sup>

## ii.

Objections have been raised against the holy practice of prayer, which it is well to meet.

1. It has been urged that as God always works by law, it is useless to pray, for how can man's prayers alter God's laws. It is true that where we see God's working, it is according to law and order, whether in nature or in grace. But God's law is not a blind unreasoning force, which works in a groove as a mere machine, but the free action of the intelligent will of a moral agent. Almighty God is not bound by rules. Cannot He supersede a lower rule of working by a higher? It is true "the help that is done upon earth He doeth it Himself,"<sup>2</sup> yet cannot He do it as He wills, unfettered by the bondage of any rules whatever? Prayer really exalts God by acknowledging that He is not the slave of His own rules of action, and that with Him "all things are possible."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Some Elements of Religion*, pp. 197, 198.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. lxxiv. 13.

<sup>3</sup> St. Matt. xix. 26.

2. A second objection to prayer has been raised grounded on God's foreknowledge of events. It is said, that as everything that happens has been planned beforehand by God, it is therefore useless to pray, for prayer cannot influence God in what is already arranged by His providence. The answer to this is, that God's dealings with us may be affected by the prayers we address to Him. His providence does not interfere with our moral freedom. He has left us free to do what we will, yet He foresees how we shall act. His providence is ordered by our conduct, and why should not our prayers enter into His calculations as factors and causes, working out that final result which all along He has foreseen and allowed for. God works out His plans not merely *in* us, but *also* by us.

3. Another objection to prayer has been based on the consideration of God's greatness, and our littleness. Is it reasonable that the Maker and Ruler of this vast universe should be expected to attend to the prayers of so insignificant a being as man? Is not God too much occupied in the ordering of His great creation to pay attention to the desires of one of His creatures; is not the prayer of man too trifling to be heeded by one so infinitely great as God is? The reply to such questions as these is, that nothing is greater in creation than man, and that such is God's marvellous love for everything that He has made, that the welfare of the least of His children is a matter of deep concern to Him. Our Lord's Sacrifice upon the cross was made for all men, yet St. Paul could say, "Who loved me, and gave himself for



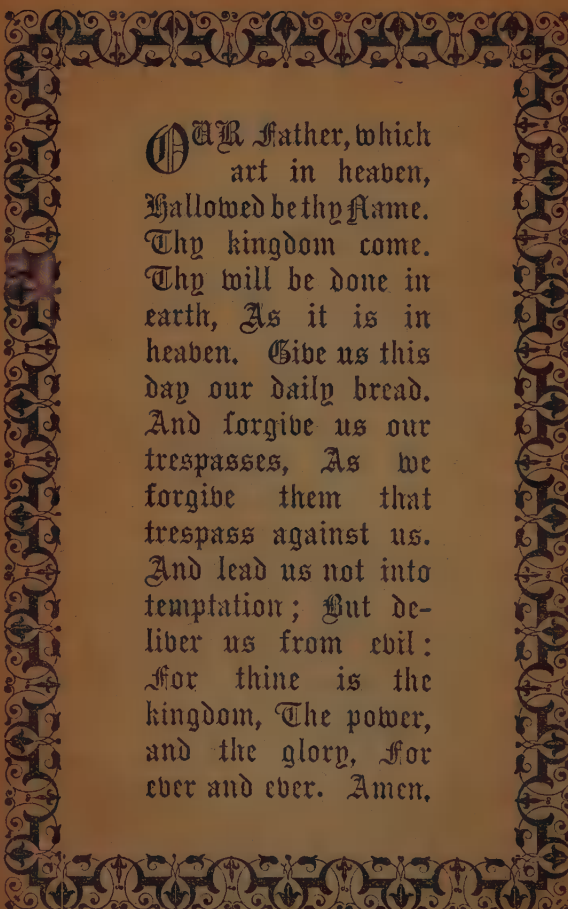
me."<sup>1</sup> Thus God's providence, which is over all creation, is over every life in detail. If He clothes the grass of the field and protects the sparrows, surely, the needs of His children are not beneath His fatherly attention.<sup>2</sup>

## I. THE LORD'S PRAYER.

The Lord's Prayer, as its name implies, was composed by our Lord Jesus Christ; it is the best of all prayers, and that which the Christian should most frequently use. It comes to us hallowed by great associations. It was first uttered by the lips of our Incarnate Lord, as He gave it to His Church; it is written in the Holy Gospels; it has been used by Apostles, Martyrs, and Saints, in all languages; it is the prayer of kings and peasants, of old men and little children; it is the prayer of the whole Church of God in all countries and in all ages. And so the Church has specially honoured the Lord's Prayer, giving it a place in every office of the Prayer Book, and causing it to be repeated twice in the three chief services, the Holy Eucharist, Mattins, and Evensong. The Lord's Prayer contains God's own statement of the needs of man, and, in praying it, we have Divine authority for believing that all we ask is according to the mind of God. Nine hundred years ago, the bishops under King Canute beautifully said,—“It contains a message to God regarding every need a man may have, either for this life or for that to come.”

<sup>1</sup> Gal. ii. 20.

<sup>2</sup> In the foregoing, the Author has drawn from Dr. Liddon's *Some Elements of Religion*, Lecture V.



**O**UR Father, which  
art in heaven,  
Hallowed be thy Name.  
Thy kingdom come.  
Thy will be done in  
earth, As it is in  
heaven. Give us this  
day our daily bread.  
And forgive us our  
trespasses, As we  
forgive them that  
trespass against us.  
And lead us not into  
temptation; But de-  
liber us from evil:  
For thine is the  
kingdom, The power,  
and the glory, For  
ever and ever. Amen.

"The Our Father" consists of seven petitions, which fall into one of two divisions, marked by the use of the words *Thy*, and *us* and *our*. The Prayer places God's glory first, and our needs in the second place. The seven petitions may be summarised thus:—

## GOD'S GLORY.

*We pray for,*

1. Reverence.
2. Loyalty.
3. Obedience.

## MAN'S NEEDS.

*We pray for,*

4. Food.
5. Forgiveness.
6. Guidance.
7. Deliverance.

"OUR FATHER, WHICH ART IN HEAVEN."

The Lord's Prayer is the prayer of the baptised. It addresses God as "Father," and thus can only be used by those who have been made His children in Holy Baptism, and so adopted into His family,—the Church. In the early days of the Church no unbaptised person was permitted to say "the Our Father." Persons under preparation for Holy Baptism were instructed in its meaning as part of such preparation, and learnt it by heart the week preceding Baptism; but they were not allowed to use it as a prayer, until they had received that Sacrament. Thus we find St. Augustine in his sermon to candidates for Baptism saying,—“For how can they say ‘the Our Father’ who are not yet born?” He is referring to the birth of Baptism.

St. Augustine speaks of the Lord's Prayer as "the fraternal prayer." We do not address God as *my* Father, but as *our* Father. If He is our Father, then we are brethren. The Lord's

Prayer is a great bond of unity, for we never say it without praying for the whole Church, thus making a great act of intercession.

i. "HALLOWED BE THY NAME."

The word "hallow" means to account sacred, or to reverence. By God's Name, we are to understand God Himself. His Name is so used frequently in the Holy Scriptures.<sup>1</sup> Our Lord said to His Apostles,—“I have manifested Thy Name unto the men which Thou gavest Me;”<sup>2</sup> by which He meant that He had revealed God to them.

By the Name of God, we are also to understand the things which concern Him, such as His House, His Day, His Word, His Sacraments, His Ministers; all of which are to be treated with reverence because they belong to Him. In praying “hallowed be Thy Name,” we ask for grace to keep the third Commandment, which forbids the taking of God's Name in vain. Christians are to sanctify everything upon which God has placed His Name. The way of the world is to scoff at all sanctifying, and to treat all things as common. It is the duty of the children of God who pray the Lord's Prayer, to redeem common things and to restore their relation to Him.

ii. "THY KINGDOM COME."

In this petition we chiefly pray that God's rule may be everywhere accepted. That this happy result may be effected, we are first of all to be careful that the Kingdom of God may

<sup>1</sup> See Ps. xx. 1.; lxix. 37. Neh. i. 11.    <sup>2</sup> St. John xvii. 6.

come to our own souls. Of the true servants of God, Jesus Christ has said,—“the Kingdom of God is within you.”<sup>1</sup> St. Paul writes,—“Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body.”<sup>2</sup> Within the soul of every man is a throne upon which either God or sin sits as a king. We pray that God alone may occupy the throne of the heart. When this is so, we shall be able to influence others for good, and so God’s Kingdom will spread in the world.

He who prays this petition should take a real interest in the Church’s Missions to the heathen. If we cannot give alms, we can offer our prayers that God will bless and prosper the missionary work of His Church.

In this petition we pray for Christ’s second coming to judgment, when all remaining enemies shall be put under His feet. Unless the Kingdom has come to our hearts, we are not ready for Christ’s coming at the end of the world. As we cannot alter the Prayer, we must alter our lives, and thus be getting ready for the second coming of our Lord.

iii. “THY WILL BE DONE IN EARTH, AS IT IS  
IN HEAVEN.”

This is the most sacred of all the seven petitions of the Lord’s Prayer, for it was the prayer of Jesus Christ. In the Garden of Gethsemane, on the eve of His Sacrifice, Jesus thrice prayed this prayer. God’s will is a wise and good will, and nothing can really go well with us until we are yielding to and fulfilling it. Our Blessed Lord said,—“My meat is to do the

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke xvii. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Rom. vi. 12.

will of Him that sent Me, and to finish His work."† God's will represents the highest good that can happen to us, for even the evils we suffer work together for good to them that love God, and keep His commandments. Anything which is not according to His will is under a curse.

By "Thy will be done," we not only mean that all God's appointments of trial or suffering are to be patiently borne, but also that His will may be actively carried out by us. The will of God is not only to be accepted, but it is also to be fulfilled. God has given us a free will, and we pray that in all things, great and small, our wills may follow His, choosing that which He chooses, and rejecting that which He rejects. The rule of life is the same under all circumstances,—to do God's will as we see it.

We pray that His will may be done in earth as it is in heaven. In heaven it is done by the holy angels, consciously and completely, cheerfully and continually.

#### iv. "GIVE US THIS DAY OUR DAILY BREAD."

This petition tells us of our dependence upon God; for, in it, we pray for everything needful for the welfare of soul and body.

We ask Him for our food, and this day by day. We are apt to take our food as a matter of course, forgetting from Whose Hand it comes. We must remember too that our food would not nourish us apart from God's blessing. It is a holy practice never to take our food without first asking God to bless it to our use, and to return thanks to Him after meals.

† St. John iv. 34.

But in this petition we pray also for the food of our souls. Our Lord taught that the food of the soul is of more importance than that of the body, when He said,—“Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life.”<sup>1</sup> He is referring to the Sacrament of His Body and Blood, which He spoke of as the Bread of Life. They who do not go to Communion are not living as they pray.

V. “FORGIVE US OUR TRESPASSES, AS WE FORGIVE THEM THAT TRESPASS AGAINST US.

Our Lord meant us to use “the Our Father” daily: we learn this from the last petition, which asks for *daily* bread. We are to pray too for daily forgiveness, for however good we are, we never pass a day without falling into some sin, however small. “A just man,” saith Solomon, “falleth seven times.”<sup>2</sup> It was the great Augustine who taught his hearers that the earnest use of this petition obtains pardon for such daily imperfections. We do not in this petition pray for first forgiveness, but to cover the daily sins which, even in a state of grace, by our frailty we commit. St. Augustine’s words are,—“Baptism is provided on account of all sins; prayer is provided on account of little sins, without which no one is able to live. What does the Prayer say? ‘Forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us.’ We are cleansed once for all in Baptism, we are cleansed daily by prayer.”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> St. John vi. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Prov. xxiv. 16.

<sup>3</sup> *Sermons to Catechumens*, 15.

We pray that God will so forgive us, as we forgive others. This is the only petition in "the Our Father" conditional upon our doing something. "As we forgive," means in like manner as we forgive. The reason why Christ has thus taught us to pray is, because we are not fit to receive mercy from God until we have shewn it to others. "Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy."<sup>1</sup> It has been said,—“He that cannot forgive others, breaks the bridge over which he must pass himself.”

#### vi. AND LEAD US NOT INTO TEMPTATION.

The last petition teaches that as sinful creatures we need pardon, this petition teaches that as helpless and weak, we need guidance and succour. The petition may mean either, Do not permit us to fall into temptation: in other words,—Suffer us not to be placed in positions dangerous to our spiritual safety. Our Blessed Lord has bidden us "Watch ye and pray, lest ye enter into temptation."<sup>2</sup> Or it may mean,—Suffer us not to be overwhelmed when tempted. It is no sin to be tempted: the sin begins when we consent to the temptation. As we pray the prayer, we ought to be careful not to put ourselves in the way of danger, and when danger comes, to be earnest and prompt in prayer for help.

#### vii. "BUT DELIVER US FROM EVIL."

This petition asks God to save us from all manner of harm both to soul and body. It is

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. v. 7.

<sup>2</sup> St. Mark xiv. 38.



probable that our Lord meant, Deliver us from the Evil One, i.e. our great enemy; and, if so, the words include all moral evil which is the work of the Evil One. But we are sure that it is His will to save us from all moral evil, or sin; for sin does the soul infinite harm. The Christian is daily subject to evils of all kinds, let him therefore pray this prayer very earnestly. "When prayer leads the van, deliverance brings up the rear." Although it is not wrong to ask God to save us from physical evil, such as pain or disease, yet it may not please Him always to answer our prayer; for He often turns physical evils into real blessings, and then we should be patient, trusting that He will order all for our highest good.

"FOR THINE IS THE KINGDOM, THE POWER,  
AND THE GLORY, FOR EVER AND EVER. AMEN."

These words form what is known as the Doxology. They are sometimes omitted from the Lord's Prayer in the Prayer Book. Some doubt has been expressed as to whether they form part of the Prayer as given by our Lord. They are found in the Prayer as printed in St. Matthew's Gospel, and they are wanting in that in St. Luke's Gospel. But as the Prayer was given by Christ on two occasions, He may possibly have omitted the Doxology in the one case, and added it in the other.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE CHRISTIAN COURSE.

#### I. PREDESTINATION AND ELECTION.

**A**LMIGHTY God, our Heavenly Father, "worketh all things after the counsel of His own will." He does nothing in time, which He has not "purposed in Himself" in eternity. It has pleased God to make known to us His eternal purpose to "gather together in one all things in Christ."<sup>1</sup> This Divine purpose of gathering together the elect into one Body, and thus bringing them to eternal life in Christ, is called "Predestination" and "Election."

Predestination does not mean that some souls are fore-ordained to eternal life, and others to eternal death, for there is no purpose of God to bring any man to eternal death. God "will have ALL men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth."<sup>2</sup>

There is a purpose in everything, both in the order of nature and in that of grace. In the order of grace, Predestination corresponds to some extent with Providence in the order of nature. An acorn is naturally predestined to produce an oak, but it may fail to realize that purpose; all acorns do not produce oaks. If it does fail, it misses its predestined end. So the soul is predestined to a life of grace and

<sup>1</sup> Eph. i. 9, 10, 11.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Tim. ii. 4.

obedience here, leading to a life of glory hereafter: but it may fail, and miss the mark. If the laws which determine the germination and growth of an acorn are observed, the oak will be produced from it. In like manner if the soul obeys God, and corresponds with His grace, it will come to eternal life. God who calls and elects, also bids us "to make our calling and election sure."<sup>1</sup>

God is "not willing that ANY should perish, but that ALL should come to repentance."<sup>2</sup> Therefore, if any man is lost, it is of his own fault.

God has predestinated us "to be conformed to the image of His Son,"<sup>3</sup> but no man can be conformed to the image of Christ against his own will. Hence it is said that we are "elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto OBEDIENCE and sprinkling of the Blood of Jesus Christ."<sup>4</sup>

Sin alone, deliberately chosen, persevered in, and unrepented of, shuts out of heaven: and no man need sin unless he chooses. Nothing is accounted sin by God, unless it might have been avoided. God causes no one to sin. We sin because we "frustrate the grace of God,"<sup>5</sup> and "receive the grace of God in vain."<sup>6</sup> The very fact that the grace of God is offered to all men, proves that He does not will that anyone should either sin or be lost.

God does not elect all men to the same position in His kingdom. He gives to some ten talents, to others five, to others two; but

<sup>1</sup> 2 S. Peter i. 10.

<sup>3</sup> Rom. viii. 29.

<sup>5</sup> Gal. ii. 21.

<sup>2</sup> 2 St. Peter iii. 9.

<sup>4</sup> 1 St. Peter i. 2.

<sup>6</sup> 2 Cor. vi. 1.

He gives to all one talent, and to everyone grace to correspond to his vocation. If God bestows His grace in a way which seems to us unequal, yet to no one does He give less grace than is necessary for salvation. The lot of each soul in eternity will depend upon the use made of that grace. Everyone is called to, and is capable of, salvation, but God alone knows those who will "make their calling and election sure."<sup>1</sup>

## II. GRACE AND FREEWILL.

The soul of man is the seat of Freewill. Freewill is that great gift of God to man, whereby he is able to choose good or evil. The possession of Freewill raises man above all the creatures around him, and makes him capable of corresponding with God's Grace. The soul would be incapable of either moral goodness or moral evil, unless it was free to choose one or the other. Without Freewill we should be mere machines, not moral agents created in the image of God. There could be no responsibility in the sight of God for our actions, unless our wills were unfettered. Nothing teaches more forcibly the exceeding blessedness and greatness of a free obedience, than the consideration that it was only possible at the risk of sin and rebellion.

By the fall, the faculties of the soul were seriously disordered, and the will became enfeebled, and prone to an evil choice. To remedy this defect God bestows Grace upon the soul. Grace is a spiritual gift of God,

<sup>1</sup> 2 St. Peter i. 10.

which makes man acceptable to Him, and able to serve Him. Grace enlightens the mind, cleanses the heart, and strengthens the will, uniting us with all the powers of our life to God. Grace is the free gift of God, bestowed on us for the sake of Jesus Christ, wrought in us by the Holy Ghost, to enable us to know and to do the will of God.<sup>1</sup>

The Grace of God corrects the natural bias of the will in fallen man towards evil. The earth upon which we live has two distinct motions. The earth revolves upon its axis once a day, and it journeys round the sun once a year. If it only moved round upon its axis, it would fly off into space to its destruction. The attraction of the sun upon the earth as it turns upon its axis, checks this tendency to wander away, and keeps the earth in its appointed path. It is thus with the movements of the will acting under Grace; only with this difference, that Grace does not constrain or force the will, for Grace may be resisted. Grace attracts, persuades, and aids the will to a right choice. As St. Augustine says,—“Not Grace alone, nor man alone, but Grace working with man, will save:” and again “He who created

<sup>1</sup> “Grace is not simply kindly feeling on the part of God, but a positive boon conferred on man. Grace is a real and active force; it is, as the Apostle says, ‘the power that worketh in us’ (Eph. iii. 20), illuminating the intellect, warming the heart, strengthening the will of redeemed humanity. It is the might of the Everlasting Spirit renovating man by uniting him, whether immediately or through the Sacraments, to the Sacred Manhood of the Word Incarnate.”—Liddon’s *University Sermons*. First Series, p. 44.

“Grace is power. That power whereby God works in nature is called power. That power whereby He works in the wills of His reasonable creatures is called grace.”—Mozley, *On Predestination*, p. 302.

thee without thee, will not save thee without thee."

<sup>1</sup> When we see the lid of a casket forced open, and the hinges torn away, we look upon the work of the *spoiler*; but when we see the casket gently unlocked by the key, and the contents brought out, we note the hand of the *owner*. Grace does not work by violence in opening the heart, forcing or crushing the free action of the will. This is not the method of Him who comes not as a plunderer to His prey, but as a possessor to His treasure. The will is not blinded by Grace, but it is enlightened, and the whole man is enabled to act with 'the glorious liberty of the children of God.'<sup>2</sup> Grace does not enslave the will, but enfranchises it.

### III. REGENERATION.

There is much confusion in many minds concerning Conversion and Regeneration. This confusion arises in a great measure from a misapprehension of our Lord's words to Nicodemus as to the necessity of the new birth, recorded in St. John iii. 1-14.

Regeneration is the being born again "of water and of the Spirit." It is the act of God the Holy Ghost upon the soul in Baptism,—a single definite act which can never be repeated. In Baptism, God gives the soul the new birth, or, in other words, regenerates it. In Regeneration we receive a new nature, and pass out from the natural into the supernatural order of

<sup>1</sup> From Spurgeon's *Feathers for Arrows*.

<sup>2</sup> Rom. viii. 21.

things. This new nature is as a seed planted within the soul, and it is intended to grow and to bear fruit.<sup>1</sup>

Conversion, as we shall see in the next section, consists in the conscious turning of the will to God. It is the act of man, through grace, as he accepts the mercy and the love offered by Jesus Christ.

Thus we see that Regeneration and Conversion are quite distinct, since a converted man is not necessarily a regenerated man. From a comparison of Acts ix. 9 with Acts xxii. 13, 16, we learn that St. Paul was not baptised until three days after his conversion. In his case, Conversion preceded the new birth.

St. John does not, in his Gospel, tell of the institution of the Sacrament of Holy Baptism, but he records a very full explanation of its meaning in the words of our Lord to Nicodemus.<sup>2</sup> In this passage our Lord declares that, "Except a man be born again, he

<sup>1</sup> "We are made new creatures by a present change working in our moral nature; that is to say, through our Regeneration in holy baptism. By the love of God electing us to a new birth of the Spirit, and by the Holy Ghost working through that visible sacrament, we are translated from wrath to grace, from the power of darkness to the kingdom of His dear Son. Old things pass away, and all things become new around the regenerate man. We look upward to a new heaven; we stand upon a new earth: . . . We are brought under the shadow of the Cross, within whose dominion the powers of sin are bound. We receive that thing which by nature we cannot have—a baptism not of water only, but of the Holy Ghost. . . . In baptism we are so made new creatures, that we may either grow daily to the sanctity of angels, or may fall, and hold our Regeneration in unrighteousness; as angels that kept not their first estate still hold their angelic nature in anguish and in warfare against God."—*Manning's Sermons*, Vol. I., pp. 20, 21.

<sup>2</sup> Chapter iii. 1-14.

cannot see the kingdom of God;" and He explains this statement by adding, "Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God." Thus "to be born of water and of the Spirit," is the same as "to be born again." Now the joining together of "water" and "the Spirit," can only refer to baptism. To be "born of water and of the Spirit," cannot mean "to be converted," for the use of water has no part in Conversion. If our Lord had said, "Except a man be born of the Spirit" only, we might have been in doubt whether He meant Conversion or not; but since He said "of water and of the Spirit," there can be no doubt as to His meaning. Hooker writes,—“Of all the ancient (writers), there is not one to be named that ever did otherwise expound or allege the place” (i.e. St. John iii. 5) “than as implying external baptism.”<sup>1</sup>

St. Paul uses an expression which confirms this interpretation. In his epistle to Titus<sup>2</sup> he writes, “According to His mercy He saved us, by the washing of Regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost.” The word here used for “washing” means a “bath,” which implies the use of water. So here again, Regeneration, or the new birth, is associated with the use of water,—the bath of the font. The first words that the priest is directed to say after baptising a child and receiving it into the Church, are these,—“Seeing now, dearly beloved brethren, that this child is regenerate.”<sup>3</sup> THEREFORE, EVERY PERSON WHO HAS BEEN RIGHTLY BAPTISED, HAS, THROUGH THE SPIRIT, BEEN BORN AGAIN.

<sup>1</sup> *Eccl. Polity*, v. 59, 3.

<sup>2</sup> iii. 5.

<sup>3</sup> *Public Baptism of Infants*.



We must not think that because a person has been born again, he will necessarily be saved. Regeneration is not final salvation, but it places the soul in such a relation to God as to make salvation possible. The germ of the new life, implanted in the soul at baptism, needs to be cared for and developed. The new life in Christ is as a seed within the soul, which needs to be watered and tended, that it may live and grow until sin is destroyed, and the new life is perfected. There are thus two forces at work in the soul of the regenerate man. Good and evil meet in the baptised, and one or other must in the end prevail. The issue of the conflict depends upon the will, working with or against grace.

#### IV. CONVERSION.

There are two words used in the New Testament which describe the process whereby a man passes from a state of habitual sin to a state of holiness. These words are "Repentance" and "Conversion." The first of these is most frequently used in the New Testament, but it is of the latter that we are now about to speak.

The word "Conversion" means a turning with or towards a person instead of a turning away from him, hence, a change of purpose. A converted man is one who having turned away from God, is now turned towards Him. Having hidden his face from God and walked away from Him, he has now turned round, and is facing Him, or walking with Him. We speak of such an one as a changed man, i.e. one who has changed the aim or purpose of his life; and this great change we call Conversion. Conver-

sion consists in the conscious yielding of the heart, mind, and will to God. It is the willing acceptance of the mercy, truth, and love of God. Conversion may take place *before* baptism, leading a person to seek the new birth in that Sacrament; or it may take place *after* baptism, when one who has been born again in baptism, but has never striven to live well, may turn from evil and begin to do better. In the case of a baptised person, Conversion may be regarded as the willing acknowledgment of the baptismal vows, and the conscious acceptance of his position as the child of God by adoption and grace.

Conversion may be sudden, or it may be gradual. Sudden Conversion is the instantaneous passage "from darkness to light," without any intervening twilight,—a violent change in the soul's history. Such conversions are rare, and we may regard them as the exception rather than the rule. The cases of the penitent thief, the jailer at Philippi, and that of St. Paul, fall under the head of sudden Conversion. Lacordaire, the great French preacher, in describing his own Conversion, said,—“I seem to see a man who is making his way along, as it were, by chance, and with a bandage over his eyes; it is a little loosened—he catches a glimpse of the light—and, at the moment when the handkerchief falls, he stands face to face with the noon-day sun.” “This touch of grace was in him so vivid that he never lost the memory of it. On his death-bed he described this *sublime moment* with just the same emotion. . . . Every Christian knows this state, more or less, but Conversion is not ordinarily produced in the way of sudden illumination, like

a flash of lightning in a dark night, but rather under the form of growing daylight, like that which precedes the sunrise."<sup>1</sup>

The majority of earnest people find it impossible to say *when* they first consciously yielded up the heart to God. The life of such has been a succession of gentle changes and renewals, each bringing the soul nearer to Him. The process of Conversion in these cases has been decidedly gradual, "first the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear."<sup>2</sup>

Because a man is once converted it does not follow that he is safe. A converted man may fall from his state of grace and salvation and become a backslider, and so need converting again. St. Paul was undoubtedly converted on the road to Damascus, yet he often speaks as though conscious of the possibility of falling away.<sup>3</sup>

Conversion, like Repentance, is not a solitary act, but a lifelong, continual process, a daily passing from death unto life, under the influ-

<sup>1</sup> *Chocarne's Life of Lacordaire*, pp. 41, etc.

<sup>2</sup> St. Mark iv. 28.

"There are," says Canon Carter, "in the lives of all who are saved certain turning points, when either for the first time the soul is drawn to God, or previous drawings are sensibly deepened. They vary in degree from the gentle quickenings of a life-long piety to the violent revolutions which take place in souls who are as brands plucked out of the burning. Such seasons can never be forgotten; they stand out prominently as landmarks in our course, on which alone the light of heaven seems to be shining, filling up the whole retrospect, and shutting out the intervening experiences of the soul. In all such cases there have been, doubtless, secret preparations of the heart, leading on, and opening the way to these critical seasons. But the eye of the soul rests only on these great points in its history, and they did, in fact, determine its Conversion."—*Sermons*, 1862, p. 47.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Cor. ix. 27; x. 12; Phil. iii. 12, 13.

ence of the grace of God. For not until the will of man corresponds completely and perpetually to the will of God, will Conversion be really effectual. "He that endureth to the end shall be saved."<sup>1</sup>

## V. JUSTIFICATION.

Justification is the act of God upon the soul whereby He cleanses it, and endows it with righteousness by uniting it to Christ. Christ "died to destroy the rule of the devil in us, and He rose again to send down the Holy Spirit to rule in our hearts, and to endow us with perfect righteousness."<sup>2</sup>

The term Justification describes the state of man in this life as redeemed by Christ, and united to Him, in contrast with His state by nature. By sin, original and actual, we are at enmity with God; by our union with Christ this enmity is done away, we are made God's children and treated as such, and so gradually fitted for heaven. Thus, the state of Justification is much the same as the state of grace, i.e. the state in which God's favour rests upon the soul, and His help assists it.

Justification is not the office of man but of God: for man cannot make himself righteous by his own works. "It is God that justifieth."<sup>3</sup> Justification proceeds from the love of God, which is the first or *moving cause* of our Justification. "We love Him, because He first loved us."<sup>4</sup> We are justified by God "only for the merit of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ,"<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. x. 22.

<sup>2</sup> *Homily on the Resurrection.*

<sup>3</sup> Rom. viii. 33.

<sup>4</sup> 1 St. John iv. 19.

<sup>5</sup> Art. XI.

His death and passion being *the meritorious cause* of our Justification. God justifies us by "the grace of Christ, and the inspiration of His Spirit."<sup>1</sup> This action of the Holy Spirit is *the efficacious cause* of our Justification, endowing us with perfect righteousness. The Sacraments are *the instrumental cause* of Justification on God's part; they are the Divinely-appointed instruments by which God "doth work invisibly in us."<sup>2</sup> In order that the soul may receive sacramental grace savingly, it is necessary to approach the Sacraments with faith and repentance. If faith is the opening and stretching forth of the hand of the soul to receive God's gift of Justification, repentance is the cleansing of that hand.

When we say that we are justified by faith and repentance, we do not mean that faith or repentance justify of themselves; but rather that they are the conditions upon which we are united to Christ by Justification. Faith apprehends and appropriates the merits of Christ, and thus it is said that we are "justified by faith."<sup>3</sup> A holy life is the evidence of a true repentance, and a lively faith in Christ. Justification does not mean that God regards us as holy when we are not really so. "They that keep holiness holily shall be justified."<sup>4</sup> Christians who do not live according to their calling and neglect the means of grace, throw away also the gift of Justification, and lose their salvation.

<sup>1</sup> Art. XIII.<sup>2</sup> Art. XXV.<sup>3</sup> Rom. v. 1.<sup>4</sup> Wisdom vi. 10, *margin*.

"This sentence, that we be justified by faith only, is not so meant, that the said justifying faith is alone in man, without true repentance, hope, charity, dread, and the fear of God, at any time and season."—*Homily of Salvation*.

## VI. SANCTIFICATION.

Sanctification is the term used to describe the work of God the Holy Ghost upon the character of those who are justified. We are justified in order that we may be sanctified, and we are sanctified in order that we may be glorified. "Whom He justified, them He also glorified."<sup>1</sup>

The grace of God is given to make us holy, and so to fit us for God's presence in eternity; for "without holiness no man shall see the Lord."<sup>2</sup> In Holy Baptism we are born again into a state of Justification, that we may be completely renewed. This renewal depends upon our union with Christ; the Source of Holiness. Our union with Christ,—commenced in Baptism, and dependent upon the abiding presence of the Holy Spirit in the soul,—is sustained by feeding upon Him in the Holy Communion of His Body and Blood.

We are responsible to God for the use we make of the opportunities of Sanctification, which never fail to wait on the regenerate and justified. If we fail to use these opportunities, then our Justification, like the one talent wrapped in a napkin and unused, becomes a witness against us in the day of judgment. God's manifold dealings with us in grace and providence are the means by which the Holy Spirit,—our wills co-operating,—carries on and perfects the work of Sanctification.

Sanctification is the consecration of the redeemed man, with all the powers of his soul

<sup>1</sup> Rom. viii. 30.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Pet. iii. 14.

and body, to the perfect and eternal service of God. "Christ loved the Church, and gave Himself for it; that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, that He might present it to Himself a glorious Church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish."<sup>1</sup>

## VII. FINAL PERSEVERANCE.<sup>2</sup>

Perseverance is the crown of all God's dealings with the soul in its earthly course. On God's part, it is the perfecting of that good work which He began in regeneration.<sup>3</sup> On the side of man, it is the continuance in that state of salvation to which baptism introduces him, and the correspondence with God's grace even unto the end. On this account it is named "Final Perseverance."

The saying 'once in grace, always in grace,' is not necessarily true, for, as we have already said, grace may be received in vain,<sup>4</sup> and even resisted.<sup>5</sup> The writer to the Epistle to the Hebrews speaks of the falling away of some "who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift,"<sup>6</sup> and St. John also speaks of those who "went out from us."<sup>7</sup>

It is therefore perilous to trust to the feeling of assurance, when all must depend on a con-

<sup>1</sup> Eph. v. 25, etc.

<sup>2</sup> The Author is indebted to The Rev. Canon T. T. Carter for this concluding article on "The Christian Course," written specially for this work.

<sup>3</sup> Phil. i. 6.

<sup>4</sup> 2 Cor. vi. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Acts vii. 51.

<sup>6</sup> Heb. vi. 4-6.

<sup>7</sup> 1 St. John ii. 19.

tinued faithfulness to grace, and a true conformity to the will of God.

The humblest man is the most diffident. The most confident is the most likely to be self-deceived. The very best among us has need to take to himself the Apostle's warning, "Let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall."<sup>1</sup> There is a 'holy fear,' which it is always needful to cherish, and he that feareth is the more likely to be kept safely to the end. There is a warning that with all our joy in a conscious state of grace, we should "rejoice with trembling."<sup>2</sup> One of the saddest deceits of Satan is to encourage a spirit of presumption, and false peace. The desponding soul may often be the surest of being finally saved.

The only ground of an assured hope is in the faithful use of all the means of grace, and the diligent practice of good works,—“perfecting holiness in the fear of God.”<sup>3</sup> St. Paul could say of himself, “I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith: henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day.”<sup>4</sup> And great as St. Paul was, beyond any, in his calm and patient sufferings, yet to others also the same trustful assurance may be given. To faithful souls living in the grace of God, and in the honest practice of the Christian virtues, there comes a peace and a trustful looking forward to the glory that shall be revealed,—a hope full of immortality. To such is given an increasing

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. x. 12.

<sup>2</sup> Psalm ii. 11.

<sup>3</sup> 2 Cor. vii. 1.

<sup>4</sup> 2 Tim. iv. 7, 8.



sense of being in God, as grace grows into habit, and evil is overcome. We may believe that to these faithful souls God grants a special gift of Perseverance, as they realise the promise of our Lord concerning His sheep, "They shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand." <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> St. John x. 28.



Part Fourth.

---

Appendix.



### READING FROM THE GREAT BIBLE.

The first fully authorised version of the Bible in English, known as "The Great Bible," appeared in the year 1540. The Psalter, as now printed in the Book of Common Prayer, is taken word for word from "The Great Bible," as are also the Ten Commandments and the Comfortable Words in our Eucharistic Service. The Prayer Book refers to this version of the Scriptures, in *the Order how the Psalter is appointed to be read*, as "The Great English Bible."

On its appearance, "The Great Bible" was ordered to be set up in all the churches. Every parish priest was directed to "provide one book of the whole Bible, of the largest volume, in English, and have the same set up in some convenient place within the church, whereat the parishioners may most commodiously resort to the same, and read it." Copies of the Bible were then only provided at great cost; and for their safe keeping, it was the custom to fasten them by chains to a pillar or desk in some accessible position in the churches. The illustration represents one of these chained Bibles. In those days the majority of people could not read, and it was not uncommon for such persons to gather round the chained Bible in the churches, whilst those who could read aloud to the assembled hearers.

## CHAPTER I.

### THE HOLY BIBLE.

**A**MONGST the thousands of books which have been written, none is more important than the Holy Bible, for it contains God's own account of Himself, and of His dealings with mankind in this life and in that to come. In St. Augustine's words, "the Scriptures are letters from our heavenly country." The Bible is the best and most enduring book in the world; it has been translated into all languages, and circulated by millions; it has successfully resisted all attacks made upon it; it is the one perfect book which God has caused to be written for our learning, and it is His own gift to man.

Moreover, the Bible is an *inspired book*, and in this it chiefly differs from all other books.

#### I. THE INSPIRATION OF THE BIBLE.

The word *inspiration* signifies *inbreathing* or *breathing into*. By this term we understand the action of God the Holy Spirit upon the minds of the writers of the Bible, whereby they were enabled to deliver in writing God's message to man. "Holy men of God spake as they were moved (or carried along) by the Holy Ghost" <sup>1</sup>. The Holy Spirit inspired the writers of

<sup>1</sup> 2 St. Pet. i. 21.

the Bible, filling their minds with the truths which He willed to be made known, and impelling them to write them down. In this way the Bible is not only true as a History of England might be true, but it contains much that would never have been known unless God had revealed it, and caused it to be committed to writing. The Holy Spirit also inspired the writers of the Bible in another direction. All along the ages there had been a series of revelations from God, and of providential dealings with mankind. Inspiration enabled the writers of the Bible to select out of this mass of revelation such truths, and to place on record such events of history, as possessed an abiding value and a lasting interest to mankind. In speaking of the Bible as inspired, we claim that it is a certain and sure guide in all the principles of religion and morals, and is absolutely trustworthy.

It is true that in the composition of the Bible the mind of man worked, but it worked under the special guidance of God. The Bible was produced by man acting under the influence of God the Holy Spirit. "In what way inspiration is compatible with that personal agency on the part of its instruments, which the composition of the Bible evidences, we know not; but if anything is certain, it is this,—that, though the Bible is inspired, and therefore, in one sense, written by God, yet very large portions of it, if not far the greater part of it, are written in as free and unconstrained a manner, and (apparently) with as little consciousness of a supernatural dictation or restraint, on the part of His earthly instruments, as if He had had no share in the work. As God rules the

will, yet the will is free,—as He rules the course of the world, yet men conduct it,—so He has inspired the Bible, yet men have written it. Whatever else is true about it, this is true,—that we may speak of the history, or mode of its composition, as truly as of that of other books; we may speak of its writers having an object in view, being influenced by circumstances, being anxious, taking pains, purposely omitting or introducing things, leaving things incomplete, or supplying what others had so left. Though the Bible be inspired, it has all such characteristics as might attach to a book uninspired,—the characteristics of dialect and style, the distinct effects of times and places, youth and age, of moral and intellectual character; and I insist on this, lest I seem to forget (what I do not forget), that in spite of its human form, it has in it the spirit and the mind of God.”<sup>1</sup>

“At first sight, and judged by an ordinary literary estimate, the Bible presents an appearance of being merely a large collection of heterogeneous writings. Historical records, ranging over many centuries, biographies, dialogues, anecdotes, catalogues of moral maxims, and accounts of social experiences, poetry, the most touchingly plaintive and the most buoyantly triumphant, predictions, exhortations, warnings, varying in style, in authorship, in date, in dialect, are thrown, as it seems, somewhat arbitrarily into a single volume. . . . But beneath the differences of style, of language, and of method, which are undeniably prominent in the Sacred Books, and which appear so entirely to absorb the attention of a merely literary observer, a deeper insight will discover

<sup>1</sup> Newman in *Tracts for the Times*, No. 85, p. 30, 1840.

in Scripture such manifest unity of drift and purpose, both moral and intellectual, as to imply the continuous action of a Single Mind.”<sup>1</sup>

To this passage we may add the further words of Dr. Liddon, “In the Bible we handle the masterpiece of the Holy Spirit set forth in human speech; the one work which human frailty has not been allowed to disfigure with some taint of evil passion or of intellectual error.”<sup>2</sup>

## II. THE CONTENTS OF THE BIBLE.

The Bible appears to be one book, but it is in reality many books bound together in one volume. In the fourth century it was called by the Latins ‘the Divine Library,’ and by the Greeks ‘the Books.’ We often speak of it as ‘the Holy Scriptures,’ i.e. the holy writings. The Bible was not written at one time, by one author, in one place; but at various times, by many persons, in various places.

There are three main divisions of the Bible,—

i. THE OLD TESTAMENT.

ii. THE ECCLESIASTICAL BOOKS,  
OR APOCRYPHA.<sup>3</sup>

iii. THE NEW TESTAMENT.

i. THE OLD TESTAMENT. The word *testament* means *covenant* or *agreement*. The Old Testa-

<sup>1</sup> Liddon’s *Bampton Lectures*. II. p. 44, 1878.

<sup>2</sup> Advent Sermons, *The Bible a Preparation for Hereafter*, Vol. I., p. 259.

<sup>3</sup> The title ‘Apocrypha’ is a short form of the Greek for ‘hidden or secret books.’ How it came to be applied to the Ecclesiastical Books is uncertain.



ment contains the covenant which God made with His ancient people, the Jewish Church. Our Blessed Lord spoke of the three divisions of the Old Testament under the names of "the Law of Moses, the Prophets, and the Psalms."<sup>1</sup> Of these we will now speak.

(1) *The Law of Moses.* This portion of the Old Testament contains the first five books of the Bible, commonly known as the Pentateuch. This word signifies 'the five fold volume.' The Pentateuch consisted of a single roll divided into sections, and for a long time formed the Canon<sup>2</sup> of Jewish Scripture. The five sections of the Pentateuch are known by the names, Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. The word 'Genesis' means 'origin,' and in this book we learn the story of the origin of the world. The word 'Exodus' means 'going out,' for in this book we are told of the deliverance of God's people from the Egyptian bondage. The word 'Leviticus' signifies 'pertaining to the tribe of Levi,' and the book gives the details of the priestly duties, and the law of sacrifice. In the book 'Numbers,' we find the census of the chosen people. The word 'Deuteronomy' means 'the second Law,' and in this book we find the repetition or summary of the Law of God.

The Pentateuch is followed by the Historical Books of the Old Testament, giving the history of the chosen people.

(2) *The Prophets.* The authors of this part of the Old Testament are sixteen in number, four being known as 'the greater prophets,' and

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke xxiv. 44.

<sup>2</sup> By the term 'Canon of Scripture,' we mean the collection of writings declared by the Church to be inspired.

twelve as 'the lesser prophets.' The four greater prophets are Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, and Daniel, and hence we find their writings placed before those of the lesser prophets, being greater both in length and in importance. The prophets were men sent by God, who spoke for Him in teaching, warning, and encouraging His people, and in foretelling future events, specially those concerning the coming of Jesus Christ. Thus, for example, long years before He came, Isaiah foretold His Virgin-birth;<sup>1</sup> Micah prophesied that He should be born in Bethlehem;<sup>2</sup> and Zechariah, that He should be betrayed for thirty pieces of silver, and be crucified;<sup>3</sup> whilst Daniel foretold His second coming in glory.<sup>4</sup>

(3) *The Psalms.* The third division of the Old Testament consists of the Poetical Books, and is named 'the Psalms,' or 'the Psalter,' from the first of these books. The other poetical books, Job, the Lamentations of Jeremiah, the Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon, radiate round the Psalter as planets round the sun.

The Canonical Books of the Old Testament were collected into one whole by the Jewish Church many years before the birth of Christ. When He came, it was not to destroy the Law or the Prophets, but to fulfil them.<sup>5</sup> Our Lord often quoted from the Old Testament, referring to that volume as "the Scriptures." Speaking of the Old Testament, He bade His followers "Search the Scriptures, . . . they are they which testify of me;"<sup>6</sup> and He added, "the

<sup>1</sup> Isa. vii. 14.

<sup>3</sup> Zech. xi. 12; xii. 10.

<sup>5</sup> St. Matt. v. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Micah v. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Dan. vii. 9 to 15.

<sup>6</sup> St. John v. 39.

Scripture cannot be broken.”<sup>1</sup> “For Christians it will be enough to know that our Lord Jesus Christ set the seal of His infallible sanction on the whole of the Old Testament. He found the Hebrew Canon as we have it in our hands to-day, and He treated it as an authority which was above discussion.”<sup>2</sup>

ii. THE ECCLESIASTICAL BOOKS. About the year B.C. 300, the Hebrew Old Testament was translated into Greek at Alexandria. The translation appears to have been made for the benefit of those foreign-born Jews and others, who were ignorant of the Hebrew language, and who would speak Greek as their native tongue. This translation is called ‘the Septuagint,’ a word of Greek origin meaning ‘seventy.’ It received this name from a tradition that it was made by seventy scholars in the Isle of Pharos off Alexandria. It is from this Greek version that the writers of the New Testament generally quote; and thus is explained the variations which exist between similar passages of the Old and New Testaments in our Authorised Version,—our English Old Testament being a translation of the Hebrew, and our New Testament of the Greek.

In this Greek Version of the Old Testament are found certain writings, coming after the Prophets, which are termed the Ecclesiastical Books or the Apocrypha. These books contain the history of the Jews during the interval which elapsed between the close of the prophecy of Malachi, and the coming of our Lord. They cover a period of 400 years, and form a most valuable and interesting link between the Old

<sup>1</sup> St. John x. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Liddon’s *The Worth of the Old Testament*, p. 13.

and New Testaments; but they have never been received by the whole Church as of equal authority with the Old Testament. Selections from the Ecclesiastical Books are read annually in the English Church in parts of the months of October and November.

The Sixth Article thus speaks of them,—

“The other books (as Hierome,—i.e. St. Jerome,—saith) the Church doth read for example of life and instruction of manners; but yet doth it not apply them to establish any doctrine.”

In purchasing copies of the Holy Bible, it is well to see that the Apocrypha is included in the volume. No Bible is really complete which does not contain it.

iii. THE NEW TESTAMENT. “It was inconsistent with the origin and dignity of the Founder of the Christian Religion to write books Himself.”\* The New Testament was not written by Jesus Christ, but by certain of His followers, some years after His Ascension into heaven. Like the Old Testament, it was composed under the guidance and inspiration of the Holy Spirit. The New Testament is the fulfilment of the Old, forming the second volume of God’s written Word. St. Augustine says,—“The New Testament lies hidden in the Old; the Old Testament is made manifest in the New.”

The New Testament consists of twenty-seven portions, and is the work of eight or nine authors. Three quarters of its contents were written by St. Paul, St. Luke, and St. John. It was written quickly, in about forty years, and in this respect is a contrast to the Old Testament. It is well to remember that the

\* Döllinger’s *First Age of the Church*, Vol. i. 3rd Edition, p. 232.

books forming the New Testament were not composed in the order in which they appear in our Authorised Version. Opinions are divided as to which of the books was first written; some consider that it was one of the Gospels, others that it was St. Paul's first Epistle to the Thessalonians. It is generally agreed that the Gospel according to St. John was the last-written portion of the New Testament.

The contents of the New Testament are,—

(1) *The Four Gospels* were written by the Evangelists, St. Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke, and St. John. The word 'Gospel' means 'good tidings.' An Evangelist is one who declares the good tidings. The Gospels contain the story of our Lord's Incarnate Life, telling who He was, and what He said and did. But very specially do they record the events connected with His Passion, Death, and Resurrection. Whilst the four Gospels agree in general outline, they vary in the details given: for each of the writers regards the life of Christ from a different point of view. What one Evangelist records, another omits; what a third omits, a fourth supplies. Thus it is only by studying the four Gospels side by side that we learn the whole truth about our Lord's life. There is no part of the whole Bible so precious as the Gospels, and the Church has ever honoured them above every other portion of Holy Scripture.

(2) *The Acts of the Apostles*, written by St. Luke as the second part or continuation of His Gospel, forms the first history of the Church. In this book we have the record of the beginnings of the Christian Church on the Day of Pentecost. We read of what the Apostles said

and did immediately after our Lord's Ascension, and the Descent of the Holy Ghost upon the Church; then of St. Peter's work; and of St. Paul's wonderful conversion, of his travels as a missionary Apostle, and how he planted the Church wherever he went, leaving behind him in each centre clergy to carry on his work. This book gives the account of our Lord's administration of His Church or Kingdom, through the Holy Ghost, from His throne in heaven.

(3) *The Epistles.* The Epistles, or 'letters' as the word means, comprise the writings of St. Paul, St. James, St. Peter, St. John, and St. Jude. Some of these letters were written to private individuals as, for example, St. Paul's Epistles to St. Timothy, and St. Titus; others were addressed to congregations of Christians in a city or a district, such as St. Paul's Epistles to the Romans, and the Corinthians; whilst others again were written to the Church generally, and hence are known as the Catholic or General Epistles.

(4) *The Revelation.* This book contains the letters to the Seven Churches of Asia, and a series of visions made known to the aged Apostle St. John, whilst an exile in the Isle of Patmos, off the coast of Asia Minor. These visions concern the relation of the Church to the world, her struggle on earth against the powers of evil, and her final triumph in heaven.

Such is the Holy Bible. "No other book can equally avail to prepare us for that which lies before us; for the unknown anxieties and

sorrows which are sooner or later the portion of most men and women ; for the gradual approach of death ; for the passage into the unseen world ; for the sights and sounds which then will burst upon us ; for the period, be it long or short, of waiting and preparation ; for the Throne and the Face of the Eternal Judge. Looking back from that world, how shall we desire to have made the most of our best guide to it ! ” <sup>1</sup>

### III. THE BIBLE AND THE CHURCH.

The Bible is the child of the Church, and it is as wrong as it is impossible to separate the one from the other. If the Scriptures contain the Truth, the Church is “the pillar and ground” upon which the Truth rests.<sup>2</sup> For,—

(1) *The Church wrote the inspired books which form the Bible.*

(2) *The Church separated the inspired books from other writings.*

(3) *The Church alone can rightly interpret the Bible.*

(1) *The Church wrote the inspired books which form the Bible.* The Jewish Church wrote the Old Testament, the Christian Church wrote the New Testament. The truths of Christianity were revealed to the Church some years before the New Testament existed. In those early days these truths were taught by word of mouth. In order that they might be preserved in the

<sup>1</sup> Liddon's *The Worth of the Old Testament*, p. 30.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Tim. iii. 15.

world, the Church was again called upon to act. God inspired certain men in the Church to commit the truths of Christianity to writing. Thus the Christian Revelation was written down in the New Testament. To guard the Church from error in this important task, the aid of "the Spirit of Truth" was bestowed. Thus Inspiration fixed and safeguarded Revelation for the ages to come.

(2) *The Church separated the inspired books from other writings*; in other words the Church settled what writings formed the Bible. This is true of the Jewish Church and the Old Testament, as well as of the Christian Church and the New Testament. The books which now form the Bible were not the only writings which, at one time, claimed a place in the Sacred Volume. There were, both in Jewish and Christian times, other writings greatly prized, some of which were, for a time, thought to be inspired. There were also writings now placed in the Bible, which were not at first regarded as inspired. It became a matter of the greatest importance that such books as were inspired should be collected, and separated from those which were not inspired. Here again the Church was called upon to act, and she did so. By the light of the Holy Spirit, the Church was enabled to select from the mass of writings then existing, such books as had been composed under His special direction. This task, known as the fixing of the Canon of Scripture, was a work of many years. It is upon the authority of the Church, and upon that alone, that we know what is Scripture, and what is not. There is not sufficient internal evidence in the Bible to prove the inspiration of its parts. The Bible



cannot be its own witness. The Church is the "witness and keeper of Holy Writ." <sup>1</sup> St. Augustine uttered a great truth when he wrote, "I should not have believed the Gospel, unless the authority of the Church had moved one."

(3) *The Church alone can rightly interpret the Bible.* As the Church first received the truths of Christianity before she committed them to writing in the New Testament, so, after that volume was written, she became its interpreter. The Church is the organ of the Holy Spirit, and as such is the Divinely-appointed expositor of the Scriptures. We know the true meaning of the Bible by the general consent of the Church, influenced by the Holy Spirit's indwelling presence. The Holy Bible is the most difficult of all books to understand, for it contains the utterances of the Spirit of God, and treats of profound mysteries. St. Augustine, whose knowledge of the Bible appears in every page of his works, confessed that there were more things in the Scriptures that he did not understand, than those which he did. "No code of written law is sufficient without a court to testify to its meaning, and to give the right meaning with authority in case of dispute." As the laws of the land need an interpreter in the person of the judges, so the Bible needs the voice of the Church to expound its meaning. When St. Philip asked the Ethiopian nobleman "Understandest thou what thou readest?" he wisely replied, "How can I, except some man should guide me?" <sup>2</sup>

That every man should study the Bible for himself, putting his own meaning upon its words, cannot be a right plan; for people who

<sup>1</sup> Art. XX.

<sup>2</sup> Acts viii. 30, 31.

do this come to opposite conclusions as to main truths, such as the Divinity of Christ, the Atonement, &c. The Bible is the Word of God, but wrongly explained it ceases to be so, and becomes the word of man instead. Without an interpreter the Bible becomes a cause of angry disputes and unseemly wrangling.

Dr. Pusey has wisely said, "We acknowledge that Holy Scripture is the source of all saving truth; but it does not therefore follow that everyone, unguided, is to draw for himself the truth out of that living well."<sup>\*</sup>

If, in answer to all this, the objection be raised that the Church herself is not agreed as to the meaning of certain passages of Holy Scripture, we reply:—Differences of opinion undoubtedly exist in the Church, but not in regard to that which is necessary to salvation. On minor points of interpretation there are differences, but not as to main truths. In things essential to the salvation of the soul, the Holy Catholic Church all along the centuries has ever spoken clearly and without contradiction. The foundation truths of Christianity have been accepted in the Church *Always, Everywhere, and by All*.

<sup>\*</sup> The Rule of Faith, p. 4.

---

"When the Fathers say we are to rely upon Scripture only, they are never to be understood with exclusion of Tradition, in what cases soever it may be had; not but that the Scripture is abundantly sufficient, in and of itself, for all things, but because it is deep, and may be drawn into different senses, and so mistaken, if any man will presume upon his own strength, and go single without the Church."—Archbishop Laud's *Conferences with Fisher*, xvi. 33.





HIGH ALTAR AND REREDOS OF ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL.

## CHAPTER II.

### WORSHIP.

THE word *worship* signifies *worth-ship*, and when applied to God, means the giving to Him the honour of which He is worthy. "Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for Thou hast created all things, and for Thy pleasure they are and were created."<sup>1</sup>

Divine worship may be private or public. Public worship is the offering of united homage to God as a Great King by His subjects, the members of His Church. Whilst He accepts the worship of each individual or family, He loves more the public worship of His Church. "The Lord loveth the gates of Sion more than all the dwellings of Jacob."<sup>2</sup>

#### i.

The true idea of worship is that of an offering made by the creature to the Creator. This being so, the primary object in going to a place of worship is *to give*, and not *to get*. The hearing of sermons, however useful the custom may be, is no necessary part of Divine worship. It is usual to take advantage of the assembling of the people to impart to them instruction and exhortation, but worship strictly speaking is distinct from such exercises.

<sup>1</sup> Rev. iv. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. lxxxvii. 1.

That the Church of England takes a right view of the relative importance of worship and preaching, is evident from the fact that while she provides four public services, viz., the Holy Eucharist, Mattins, Litany, and Evensong, the Sermon is only *ordered* at one of the four.<sup>1</sup>

THE CHURCH'S CHIEF ACT OF WORSHIP IS THE CELEBRATION OF THE HOLY EUCHARIST. AS THE ONE SERVICE OF DIVINE APPOINTMENT, NO OTHER SERVICE OF THE CHURCH'S APPOINTMENT CAN BE SUBSTITUTED FOR IT. IT IS THE PLAIN DUTY OF EVERY CHRISTIAN TO ATTEND THE CELEBRATION OF THE HOLY EUCHARIST ON SUNDAYS AT LEAST. A LORD'S DAY WITHOUT ATTENDANCE AT THE LORD'S SERVICE IS NOT SPENT ACCORDING TO THE DIVINE INTENTION.

Worship being the offering of the creature to the Creator, it necessarily follows that it should be of the very best. The instinct of the Church from the first has recognised this principle, and thus we find that she has all along, according to opportunity, offered to God the choicest gifts of nature and art. She also lays down carefully considered rules as to the ceremonies of Divine worship, feeling that no detail is too trifling in the service of her King.

## ii.

Whilst thus ordering outward things, the Church has ever insisted on the necessity of

<sup>1</sup> "Then shall follow the Sermon, or one of the Homilies already set forth by authority."—*Holy Communion Office, Second Rubric after the Nicene Creed.*

a worship in which the soul bears a real and serious part. God, who ordered an elaborate ritual for His ancient Church, is represented by the prophet Isaiah (i. 10-16) as hating such a worship, when unaccompanied by devotion of heart and holiness of life. But we must remember that the abuse of a thing is no argument against its right use. When heaven was opened to St. John the Divine, and he was permitted to see the worship above, he describes a worship of which beautiful ceremonies formed an important part. No worship can possibly be more spiritual than the worship of heaven, and yet this worship finds its expression in solemn ceremonial, in music, in lights, in incense, in vestments, in prostrations, and in the casting down of crowns. We cannot do wrong in making the heavenly worship our model, for the worship of the Church below is offered to the same God, and forms our preparation for that of heaven.

## iii.

In speaking upon this subject Dr. Liddon writes,—“Religion, in order to meet the wants of human nature, will take account of each element in man’s nature: she will maintain lower relations with the bodies as well as higher relations with the souls of men. As man has, besides his unseen person, an outward and visible shape, so will religion herself provide sensible forms as well as supersensuous realities. She will exact outward as well as inward reverence, because in a being constituted like man, the one is really the condition of the other. There are bodily postures which abso-

lutely forbid heavenly exercises to the soul: to lounge in an arm-chair is inconsistent with the tension of thought and will which belongs to adoration of the Most Holy. Religion, like man himself, is a beautiful spirit tabernacling in a body of sense. Her Divine and immutable truths are shrouded beneath the unrivalled poetry of Bible language; her treasures of grace beneath the outward and visible signs which meet us in Sacraments. She proclaims the invisible by that which meets the eye; she heralds the eternal harmonies by a music that falls upon the ear. She certainly is not all form, for man is not a brute; but also she is not all spirit, for man is not an angel. She deals with man as being precisely what he is, and she enlists the lower faculties of his being in aid of the higher. Yet if she is true to man and to herself, she never allows her disciple to forget the unseen in the seen, the inward in the outward, the soul in the body. For religious purposes, the soul must always be incomparably of the highest importance, as being the very man himself; the man in the secret recesses of his being; the man at the imperishable centre of his life; the man as he lives beneath the Eye, and enters into relation with the Heart of his Infinite Creator."¹

## I. THE ORNAMENTS' RUBRIC.

Immediately before "the Order for Morning Prayer" in the Prayer Book, is found the fol-

¹ *Some Elements of Religion.* Third Edition, pp. 116, 117.



lowing direction, known as *the Ornaments' Rubric*:—

And here is to be noted, that such Ornaments of the Church, and of the Ministers thereof, at all Times of their Ministration, shall be retained, and be in use, as were in this Church of *England*, by the Authority of Parliament, in the Second Year of the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth.

This rubric contains the Church's directions in many important particulars concerning the ritual-conduct of her services. During the Commonwealth in this land, the Church's orders as to ritual-worship, were generally disobeyed. This disorder has continued in many particulars even to our own times. Slowly, yet increasingly, the Church is re-covering her lost heritage in the matter of ritual.<sup>1</sup>

## i.

Persons are often perplexed, and naturally so, at the diversities of ceremonial prevailing in our midst. Such diversities are not peculiar to our time. St. Augustine tells us that, "When my mother followed me to Milan, she found the Church there not fasting on Saturday.

<sup>1</sup> The following statistics, taken from the Tourist's Church Guide for 1892, shew a remarkable increase in some important matters of ceremonial within the last ten years.

	Number of Churches in which used.	
	In the Year 1882.	In the Year 1892.
Eastward Position.....	1,662	3,918
Eucharistic Vestments ...	336	1,029
Altar Lights .....	581	2,048
Incense .....	9	177

*The Ornaments' Rubric.*



SOME ORNAMENTS OF THE CHURCH AND OF THE  
MINISTERS THEREOF.

*(Illustration taken, by permission, from Grueber's "Pure Offering.")*

She began to be troubled, and to hesitate as to what she should do; upon which I, though not taking a personal interest then in such things, applied on her behalf to Ambrose of most blessed memory, for his advice. He answered that he could not teach me anything but what he himself practised, because if he knew any better rule, he would observe it himself. When I supposed that he intended, on the ground of his authority alone, and without supporting it by any argument, to recommend us to give up fasting on Saturday, he followed me, and said: 'When I visit Rome, I fast on Saturday: when I am here, I do not fast. On the same principle, do you observe the custom prevailing in whatever Church you come to, if you desire neither to give offence by your conduct, nor to find cause of offence in another's.' When I reported this to my mother, she accepted it gladly; and for myself, after frequently reconsidering his decision, I have always esteemed it as if I had received it by an oracle from heaven."<sup>1</sup>

At some Churches we find the Holy Eucharist celebrated by a priest in vestments, with lights on the altar, and other accessories of Divine service. At other Churches we find an absence of such things. The reason of this state of things is, that in the former case the clergy are reviving and obeying the terms of the Ornaments' Rubric, whilst in the latter the rubric is not fully regarded as it was in old time. As a matter of simple justice, it is not for those clergy who obey the plain directions of the Church, recorded in the Ornaments' Rubric, to suffer for their action: such obedience needs no justification.

<sup>1</sup> *Letter liv. to Januarius.*

## ii.

The rubric orders the retaining and the use of "such Ornaments of the Church, and of the Ministers thereof, at all Times of their Ministration . . . as were in this Church of *England*, by the Authority of Parliament, in the Second Year of the Reign of King *Edward the Sixth*." There are several sources from which we may learn what ornaments, etc. are here spoken of; amongst these, the ancient Canon Law, the Salisbury Missal, and other service-books in use in the year referred to;<sup>1</sup> and lastly the list of ornaments which was made by Edward the Sixth's instructions for the survey of the Church goods throughout the kingdom.

From a long list we may select the following:

## ORNAMENTS OF THE CHURCH.

Altars, Altar coverings.  
Chalices and Patens.  
Cruets for Wine and Water.  
Altar Crosses and Crucifixes.  
Candlesticks for Lights at the Holy Eucharist.  
Censers for Incense.  
Banners.  
Fonts.  
Pulpits, Organs, etc., etc.

## ORNAMENTS OF THE MINISTERS.

Copes. Eucharistic Vestments, viz:  
Chasubles for the priests,  
Dalmatics and Tunics for the assistants,  
Amices, Albs, Girdles,  
Stoles, Maniples.  
Surplices, etc., etc.

<sup>1</sup> *January 28, 1548, to January 28, 1549.*

It will be observed that most of these ornaments of the church, and of the ministers, are for use at the Holy Eucharist. This being the only service of Divine appointment, it is specially honoured in the matter of ceremonial and accessories. The Church thereby bears witness to the truths of the Real Presence and the Eucharistic Sacrifice.

## II. THE ECCLESIASTICAL COLOURS.

Those who follow the course of the Church's worship, not only week by week, but day by day, welcome all innocent aids to joining in it intelligently. It would be a loss to them if the church itself should always present the same uniform appearance: and it is a corresponding help when the alternation of Fast and Festival is made visible to the eye. It would be unnatural, for example, if in Lent and at Easter, there was no difference in "the ornaments of the church and of the ministers thereof."

It is with a view to making such a reasonable difference, that from remote times the employment of different colours has been adopted. Thus, when the chasuble or vestment (ordered by the Prayer Book in its first Rubric) is worn by the priest who celebrates the Holy Eucharist, it is made to vary in colour according to the season, and the same rule applies to the frontal or covering of the Altar.<sup>1</sup>

The rule most generally followed in England is known as the Roman sequence of colours. It is as follows;—

<sup>1</sup> Adapted from the Hebden Bridge Parochial Magazine, 1883.

WHITE,—The colour of purity, peace, and joy, is used from Christmas Eve, until the Octave of the Epiphany, except on Feasts of Martyrs; on Maundy Thursday (at Celebration); from Easter Eve until Pentecost, except on Martyrs' Days and Holy Cross Day; on Trinity Sunday, on St. Paul's Conversion and Lammas Day; on all Festivals of the Blessed Virgin, and of the Blessed Sacrament, the Nativity of St. John Baptist, St. Michael and All Angels, Feast of All Saints, and Saints who are not Martyrs. To these must be added the Consecration and Feast of the Dedication of a church, and the Service of Confirmation.

RED.—From Whitsun Eve until the following Saturday morning inclusive, as symbolic of the tongues of fire which rested upon the Apostles; Feasts of all Martyrs, in reference to their sealing their testimony with their blood; Festivals of the Holy Cross, and on Holy Innocents' Day when it falls upon a Sunday; the Beheading of St. John Baptist, and St. John ante Portam Latinam.

GREEN.—From the Octave of the Epiphany to Septuagesima, and from the day after Trinity Sunday to Advent, except Saints' Days, Vigils, and Ember Days.

VIOLET,—The penitential colour, is used in Advent until Christmas Eve, also from Septuagesima (all through Lent) until Maundy Thursday, allowing for the exceptions we have noted before; on the Ember Days, except at Whitsuntide; on the three Rogation Days (at any special Rogation Service, whether Litany or Eucharist—but not at Choir offices, or ordinary Eucharists); on Holy Innocents when

it falls upon a week-day, and in the Morning of Vigils, except those of Easter Day and Whitsun Day.

BLACK.—On Good Friday, and at all Services for the departed.

CLOTH OF GOLD may supersede any other colour.

### III. PIOUS CUSTOMS.

i. To kneel in prayer ; to stand in praise.

ii. To bow the head as an act of reverence ;

1. Towards the altar on entering and on leaving a church. This is done on the authority of one of the Canons (or rules) passed by Convocation in 1640, and still existing,—“We heartily commend it to all good and well affected people that they be ready to tender to the Lord their reverence and obeisance at their coming in and going out of church, according to the most ancient custom of the primitive Church in the purest times.” From very early days the altar has been regarded as “the Throne of Christ,” because He there vouchsafes His Sacramental Presence in the Holy Eucharist. We do not bow to the cross upon the altar, but towards the altar, in honour of Him, Whose it is.

In the House of Lords, when the sovereign is present, sitting upon the throne, subjects kneel and do homage ; when the throne is vacant, they bow in passing it.

2. When the Name of Jesus is mentioned. This is done in carrying out the spirit of St. Paul’s words, “In the Name of Jesus every kneeshould bow.”<sup>1</sup> The English Church enjoins

<sup>1</sup> Phil. ii. 10. R. V.

this practice in her 18th Canon, which says,—  
 “When in time of Divine Service the Lord Jesus shall be mentioned, due and lowly reverence shall be done by all persons present.”  
 We bow at the Name of Jesus, and not at that of Christ, because it is our Lord’s human Name which proclaims His mercy to mankind.

I bow at Jesu’s name, for ’tis the sign  
 Of awful mercy towards a guilty line.

3. At the words, “Glory be to the Father, etc.” in honour of the Blessed Trinity, before Whose presence the angels cover their faces.<sup>1</sup>

4. At the words, “And was made Man,” in the Nicene Creed, in the Communion office, in remembrance of our Lord’s great humility in the Incarnation.

5. At the words, “This is My Body . . . . This is My Blood,” in the prayer of consecration in the Communion office, as an act of adoration to our Lord, then sacramentally present under the forms of bread and wine. “No man eats this Flesh, unless he first adores.”<sup>2</sup> “For the wise men and the barbarians did worship this Body in the manger, with great fear and reverence, let us therefore, who are citizens of Heaven, at least not fall short of the barbarians. But thou seest Him not in the manger but on the Altar ; and thou beholdest Him not in the Virgin’s arms, but presented by the Priest, and brought to thee in sacrifice by the Holy Spirit of God.”<sup>3</sup>

iii. To make the Sign of the Cross with the right hand from the forehead down to the breast, and from the left shoulder across to the right. This may be done as an act of faith in Jesus Christ, Who came down from heaven to

<sup>1</sup> Isa. vi. 1-4.

<sup>2</sup> *St. Augustine on Ps. xcvi. 8*

<sup>3</sup> *Paraphrase of St. Chrysostom on 1 Cor. x. 24.*



earth, descended into hell, and thence rose again to ascend to the Right Hand of the Father. It is the custom to make the Sign of the Cross at the conclusion of the Apostles' and the Nicene Creeds! It may be made also in times of temptation. As early as A.D. 200 Tertullian wrote,—“At every going in and out . . . in all the ordinary actions of daily life, we trace upon the forehead the Sign of the Cross.”

#### IV. THE PRIESTHOOD OF THE LAITY.

In both Jewish and Christian times there has always been a clear distinction between the clergy and the laity, in that the clergy are “taken from among men and ordained for men in things pertaining to God.”<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless it has ever been held that the laity have a real share in the priestly work of the Church.

Thus, whilst the family of Aaron *only* had the ministerial priesthood,<sup>2</sup> yet the whole people of Israel were regarded as priests. God declared “Ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation.”<sup>3</sup> In Christian times the same principle is observed, for we find St. Peter speaking of the baptised in general as “an holy priesthood,” and again as “a royal priesthood.”<sup>4</sup> St. John also, writing of Christians generally, says, that our Lord “hath made us kings and priests unto God.”<sup>5</sup>

Whilst none but a priest may consecrate the Holy Eucharist, yet the laity co-operate with him in offering this Great Sacrifice. In 1 Cor. xiv. 16, St. Paul writes,—“Else when thou

<sup>1</sup> Heb. v. 1.      <sup>2</sup> 2 Chron. xxvi. 18.      <sup>3</sup> Exod. xix. 6.

<sup>4</sup> 1 St. Peter ii. 5, 9.      <sup>5</sup> Rev. i. 6.

shalt bless with the spirit, how shall he that occupieth the room of the unlearned say Amen at thy giving of thanks (literally, 'eucharist.')? The blessing here spoken of is that of the bread and wine in the Holy Eucharist, the "Amen" being that pronounced at the close of the Consecration Prayer by the laity, who thus joined in the priestly act.

Also in all the people's part in worship generally, there is a recognition of the duties and privileges of the laity, as entitled to take part in offerings made specially by the priest. This implies and rests on the truth that the laity are "an holy nation," chosen and taken up by baptism, into a sphere higher than their natural state.

---

"The priest may be defined as one who represents God to man, and man to God. . . . The Christian minister is God's ambassador to men: he is charged with the ministry of reconciliation; he unfolds the will of heaven; he declares in God's Name the terms on which pardon is offered; and he pronounces in God's Name the absolution of the penitent. . . . Again the Christian minister is the representative of man to God—of the congregation primarily, of the individual indirectly as a member of the congregation. The alms, the prayers, the thanksgivings of the community are offered through him. . . . He is a priest, as the mouth-piece, the delegate, of a priestly race. His acts are not his own, but the acts of the congregation." Bishop Lightfoot. *The Christian Ministry*, p. 267.

## CHAPTER III.

### I. NOTES ON THE CHURCH OFFICES.<sup>1</sup>

#### I.—THE PUBLIC BAPTISM OF INFANTS.

1. **C**HILDREN should be brought to Holy Baptism as early as possible. The Church recommends even the first or second Sunday after birth. The fear is lest some sudden illness should carry them off unbaptised. It is not necessary for them to be kept till the mother's recovery.

2. A Baptism should always be either at Morning or at Evening Prayer. It ought to be public, because it is the reception of a new member into the flock of Christ; and also in order that the child may have the benefit of the prayers of the Congregation, on which account Sunday seems the best time of all.

3. None should delay it for want of good clothes. People are "decent" when they are clean, and come in the best they have. For such, however, as are shy on this account, a week-day Evensong furnishes an opportunity when few would observe them, and those few would sympathize. But there is nothing to be ashamed of.

4. It is seemly that the father should always endeavour to be present.

<sup>1</sup> *These Notes are reproduced from the Hebden Bridge Parochial Magazine for 1881.*

5. Sponsors should, strictly speaking, be Communicants. It is of no use to bring, for sponsors, persons who are not confirmed, or are not Church-people, or lead bad lives, or are not likely to pray for those for whom they answer at the font. By the sanction of Convocation, fathers as well as mothers, are allowed to stand for their own children.

6. It should be understood that sponsors do not answer for themselves, but for the children. Baptism is a covenant, and both God and the children make an agreement: but, because the children cannot speak or understand, their sponsors speak for them.

7. Members of the Church perform a great act of charity when they undertake the sponsorial office; and if they cannot otherwise benefit their charges, they can always pray for them. "O God, bless my God-children," is soon said, but it may effect very much. And occasionally, if not constantly, they may be more specially brought before God by name.

8. At the font the sponsors should give the answers firmly, without being told to do so.

9. When the priest says, "Name this Child," not only the person who holds it, but *all* the sponsors, should very distinctly pronounce the Christian name, for which purpose they should always be told the name beforehand. The surname, or family name, should never be pronounced; the child does not want that name giving, for it comes into the world with it.

10. At the Baptism, the child's head should be bared, to avoid the wetting of the head-dress.

11. The child is signed on the forehead with the Sign of the Cross. The Church defends

this practice in her 30th Canon, and says that the primitive Christians (which is undeniable) "used it in all their actions." And, certainly, if it be neither wrong nor superstitious on this occasion, it is not easy to see how it can be so on other occasions also.

12. There is no fee or charge for Baptism. To exact one would be to commit the sin of selling a Sacrament, which conveys the grace of God. Of course, there is nothing to hinder a gift being made by such as are of ability, if they be so disposed.

13. The Baptism of a grown-up person cannot take place at the same time as that of a child. When any who are come to years of discretion desire to be baptised, notice should be given to the Clergy, that they may be properly instructed and prepared.

## II. THE CHURCHING OF WOMEN.

1. This custom among Christians corresponds with the Purification of Women after childbirth among the Jews, which was of Divine command.

2. Both under the Jewish Law, and in the Christian Church, the objects are the same, viz., to enable the mother to offer thanks to God for her preservation at a very dangerous time and that she may be qualified for returning to the ordinary duties of life.

3. It goes by the name of "Churching," because it takes place at her first visit to the church after her delivery.

4. God's House should always be the first house she enters. In some parts of the country

the neighbours would not allow her to enter their houses until she had first been to church "to pay her vows."

5. Israelitish mothers had to go to the temple at Jerusalem for this purpose, no matter in what part of the Holy Land they lived,—often, therefore, at great cost and inconvenience. Christian mothers now-a-days should, therefore, think but little of any such slight trouble as they may be put to.

6. This short office should take place immediately before a public service. But the Clergy should be told before such service begins, else the proper time may pass by.

7. The Prayer Book says that the woman "shall come decently apparelled." This does not refer to the quality of her clothing; for it does not matter how poor it is, if it be clean. But it points to the old custom of wearing a veil on this occasion, which it is not desirable to enforce now. It does, however, lend the sanction of the Church to the practice of wearing veils, as garments of a religious character, at Confirmation, and at other times.

8. As soon as the Clergy take their places in church, the woman should step forward, and kneel down at the chancel-step, where the office will be said for her, as being the most "convenient place."

9. She should have a Prayer Book with her, with the proper place found, that she may join in the office intelligently.

10. When the office is finished, "the woman, that cometh to give her thanks, must offer accustomed offerings." For a poor person the smallest sum is sufficient; but it is a proper occasion for those who are of ability to enlarge

their gifts. Under the Jewish Law, the mother offered a lamb and a dove; but if she was very poor, then two doves were sufficient, without the more costly lamb.

11. It is better to have the gift ready in the hand, so that it may be easily put into the bag, or on the book, when the priest presents it. It embarrasses the woman when she has to get it, at that time, out of her pocket or her purse. The priest takes it to the altar, to offer it as a thank-offering to God; and she should not rise from her knees until he comes away from the altar.

12. "If there be a Communion, it is convenient (that is, *suitable*) that she receive the Holy Communion," to dedicate herself to God afresh, and to seek His grace for her new duties; but she may not receive the Blessed Sacrament until she has been churched. It is well, when possible, to be churched just before some Celebration; or, if not, to embrace the earliest opportunity of communicating afterwards.

13. How is it that the husband so seldom accompanies the wife to church at these times, to join in thanking God for her safety?

14. In placing this office immediately after the Burial Service, the Church seems to regard a safe delivery in the light of a resurrection from the dead.

### III. HOLY MATRIMONY.

1. St. Paul says that Marriage should be contracted "only in the Lord." They who intend to marry should consider what God will approve, and what will be for the safety and benefit of their souls.

2. None, therefore, should make a choice which, they have reason to believe, will hinder instead of strengthening them in their religious life, and in their faithfulness to the Church of God.

3. In Holy Matrimony man and wife are made "one flesh"; and to those who come rightly disposed, high grace is given through the prayers and blessings of the Church, to consecrate their union, and to enable them to discharge their responsibilities. This is what the Church of England means us to understand when, in one of her Homilies, she calls this ordinance "the Sacrament of Matrimony." In arranging the details of the actual marriage, the aim should be to receive the Church's blessing right religiously and well.

4. Plainly then, we ought to look with disapproval upon marriages at a Registrar's Office (*see page 274*).

5. The right way is to be married in one's own church. Indeed, it is not strictly legal to be married in any other church: but the irregularity, though against the law, would not invalidate a marriage. One can hardly imagine thoughtful persons, however, desiring to be married by Clergy who are strangers to them, and not by their own pastors, at whose hands they receive all other means of grace.

6. Care should be taken to break no rule of the Church in the time chosen for marriages. They should never take place in Lent; Advent, because of its penitential character, is not a desirable season. Fridays should, of course, be avoided, and all other Fast Days, such as the Vigils before Festivals, the Ember and Rogation Days. Before fixing the time, it is



well to consult a calendar; to see what days are unsuitable.

7. The old-fashioned mode of being married by Banns is best. The money saved by richer people in not having to purchase a license, might be put to excellent uses, as in gifts to the poor.

8. The Church prefers that a wedding should not be (as it were) in secret, as if the parties were ashamed of it. She says, "they shall come into the body of the church with their friends and neighbours," that they may be witnesses, and join in the prayers. Nevertheless, persons who prefer it may be married with as much privacy as they please, providing that no law is broken.

9. The wedding party, be it great or small, should be composed of persons who are sure to behave themselves with becoming seriousness.

10. The first part of the service is called the betrothal. It is to take place, not in the chancel, but in "the body of the church." The bride and bridegroom, with the chief bridesmaid and groomsman, take their places at the step outside the chancel, the rest of the party being placed behind them. Men's hats should at once be put aside, and the gloves of the pair to be married taken off and given to their attendants; and, when the priest draws near, all should kneel, as before any other religious service.

11. As the service proceeds the priest says, "Who giveth this woman to be married to this man?" and he is to receive her "at her father's or friend's hands." It is a pity that the father himself does not always attend for this purpose. It was formerly so established

a rule, that whoever else discharged this duty was always called "the father" on the occasion.

12. Soon after this, the ring, along with the dues, is to be placed on the priest's book. The object being that he may ask God to bless the ring to her who shall wear it.

13. When the priest says, "Those whom God hath joined together let no man put asunder," all except himself are kneeling, and should remain kneeling. At this time he is to join their right hands together. It is not said by what particular action he is to do this; but a solemn and touching mode is for him to bind his stole round their hands, expressive of their union.

14. Soon after this comes the first blessing, which is one of wonderful beauty. It adds greatly to its solemnity when it is accompanied, as all benedictions should be, with the imposition of the priest's hands. In view of this, a veil, though not necessary, is the woman's most appropriate head-dress. Since a bishop or priest only can bless authoritatively, a deacon should never be asked to perform the marriage ceremony.

15. After this blessing comes the second part of the service, which, as it implores the graces needed for the married state, may be called the more sacramental portion. It is to be said in the chancel, and is commenced by a psalm, "which the Minister or Clerks shall say or sing," as they pass up to the Altar. It is one of the several occasions on which our Church authorizes processional singing.

16. After the prayer there is a second blessing, as beautiful as the first.

17. The whole office may be closed, either by an address, which need consist of no more than a few words of advice, or by the appointed recitation of Scriptural counsel to married people.

18. The final rubric is, "It is convenient (that is, *suitable*) that the new-married persons should receive the Holy Communion at the time of their Marriage, or at the first opportunity after their Marriage." If there be a Celebration at the time, the short sermon would naturally come in after the Nicene Creed. But none should communicate at a wedding except such of the friends as have given in their names beforehand, and only *before* the wedding-breakfast. Or a Celebration might be arranged for an earlier hour than the actual marriage.

#### IV. THE BURIAL OF THE DEAD.

1. We come now to the last office, excepting of course the continual remembrance of the faithful departed in prayer and Eucharist, which our Mother Church performs on behalf of her children. It concerns them as still members of the same Body, though departed this life. May we all so live that, at our departure, it may be used for ourselves in all the confidence of a holy hope!

2. The idea of the office is a high one. It is framed for a Christian who has lived and died in full communion with God in His Church. Its tone is therefore very joyous. It has indeed its sombre part in the psalms and in the first cry at the grave; in every other portion it seems

to say to the mourner, "Thy brother shall rise again."

3. In all particulars, the gloom which used to be so fashionable should be carefully avoided.

4. Never let the coffin be black. Much more becoming designs may now be had than formerly.

5. A praiseworthy determination is being manifested throughout the country to cut down unnecessary expenses, which are often found so burdensome. We show the most real respect for the dead, when we do what we believe is sensible and right, even if at first we have to be somewhat singular in paving the way for improvements.

6. Remember always to take your Prayer Book to a funeral. When you take your place in church, kneel down, as before any other office, for private prayer. Be ready to rise, without being told, when the psalm begins, and join quietly in the responses. Others will follow your example. Avoid the foolish habit of leaning forward, and burying the face in the hands as you sit.

7. In the churchyard, do your best to repress all talking. And do not press forward to look into the grave; this habit is very unbecoming. Let the immediate mourners have quiet possession of the grave-side; when they have retired, you may take a last look at the resting-place of your friend.

8. It is much to be desired that all would intelligently and devoutly join in the closing prayers, which are so moving and solemn, of course responding, and all men uncovering the head.

9. The solemnity, as well as the consolation, is immensely heightened, when the service can be choral, and arrangements for some singing might frequently be made when desired.

10. Still more desirable is a special Celebration of the Holy Eucharist for the repose of the soul of the departed, as well as for the comfort of those who survive. One of the prayers of the Burial Office is called "the collect," and points to a mortuary Celebration, at which it would of course be used.

11. Everything connected with the subsequent state of the grave, such as the design of the headstone, etc., ought to be Christian in idea. Care should be taken to remove flowers when withered; for they are then as unsightly and disorderly as they were before beautiful.

12. If a memorial card be printed, it should be correct and good. A simple card is best; and for what should be put upon it, it is generally best to ask advice. The clergy, for instance, would at any time willingly give it. The rhyming verses often used are mostly doggerel, and should be avoided. On the other hand, for those who like some verse or text, there are many which are touching and very edifying, but make sure that they are appropriate.

---

"Them which sleep in Jesus will God bring with Him."

## V. THE HOLY COMMUNION.

SUGGESTIONS FOR A DEVOUT RECEPTION OF  
THE HOLY COMMUNION.

1. Never receive the Holy Communion without careful preparation. A list of books containing suitable devotions before Communion is given on page 364.

2. If it be possible, always communicate early, that you may receive fasting, according to the custom of the Primitive Church; and also that you may "attend upon the Lord without distraction."

3. Try always to be in church at least five minutes before the service at the Altar begins, and if possible, earlier still, for private devotion. If unavoidably late, it is well, as a general rule, not to communicate except you arrive before the Confession.

4. When in Church, remember that you are engaging in a great act of congregational worship and intercession, in which each member of the "royal priesthood" should exercise his office intelligently and heartily.<sup>1</sup>

5. Fill up all intervals in the public Liturgy with prayers and intercessions. Have suitable books of devotion for this purpose:—the Clergy will recommend them. But learn not to be tied down to these.

6. When the time comes for communicating, hold yourself in readiness to go up to the Altar. Take off both your gloves, put aside your veil, or anything else that is likely to embarrass yourself or the priests.

<sup>1</sup> See Page 337.

7. Kneel down reverently at the Altar-step without too much bending forward. Say secretly again and again such words as these,—“Lord, it is good for me to be here;” or, “O good Jesu, come and feed me with Thy Body and Blood;” or, “Lord, I am not worthy that Thou shouldest come under my roof.”

8. When your own turn comes, kneel quite upright, and prepare to receive the Sacrament of the Lord's Body into the palm of your right hand, steadied by the left, holding your hand well up, with the fingers straight out. Keep the hands quite still. Then receive It from your palm with your mouth, taking care not to leave a particle on your hand, or to let one crumb fall to the ground.

9. On receiving the chalice, take hold of it firmly, by grasping its stem, in order to guide it to your lips and to prevent accidents. On no account receive it with a jerk, or let go of it suddenly. Do not wipe your lips afterwards.

10. When waiting in the chancel for room at the Altar, kneel rather than stand.

11. After returning to your place, kneel, if possible, to the end of the Service. If kneeling becomes irksome, *stand* a while. But do not *sit* after the consecration of the Blessed Sacrament, unless you are very infirm.

12. Do not leave the church until the Clergy have left the Altar. It is best to say your office of Thanksgiving before you depart.

13. When the Holy Communion is given to the sick at their homes, all women present should be careful to have their heads covered, at least with a cap or handkerchief, as strictly

as in church. It will be seen by reading the whole chapter, that St. Paul's direction in 1 Cor. xi. 5, has very special reference to the Celebration of the Holy Eucharist. The near Presence of our Blessed Lord therein demands our utmost reverence, wheresoever It be.

## II. SACRAMENTAL CONFESSION.

### DECLARATION OF DR. PUSEY.<sup>1</sup>

To sum up what I believe and have taught on this head:—

(1.) I fully believe that any sin will be forgiven by God upon a deep and entire repentance, for the Merits of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ Alone, and that those Merits are the only source of all forgiveness. Surely, one cannot see the blessed lives and death-beds of persons, who, without confession to man, live in the true faith and fear and love of God, and of our Lord Jesus Christ, without believing that they are in the full grace and favour of God. I have never taught that confession to man was necessary to forgiveness, and have said that in 1548 the Church of England had gone back to her earlier condition, as expressed in the *Pœnitentiale* of Theodore, when some confessed their sins to God alone, some to the priests; and both with great fruit within the Holy Church.

(2.) I also believe that "Our Lord Jesus Christ hath left power to His Church to absolve all sinners who truly repent and be-

<sup>1</sup> *Letter to the Bishop of London*, pp. 19, etc.



lieve in Him." This power I believe to be ministerial, as in Baptism, since it pleases God to employ visible instruments in conveying His mercies to the soul.

(3.) This power, I believe to be conferred on Priests in their ordination, in the solemn words, "Receive the Holy Ghost for the office and work of a Priest in the Church of God, now committed unto thee by the Imposition of our hands. Whose sins thou dost forgive, they are forgiven; and whose sins thou dost retain, they are retained," and that which is done in His Name, and according to His will, He confirms in heaven, as He says: "Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

(4.) I believe that Absolution is not only a comfort, but is a means of grace to the soul; or rather is a comfort, because it is a means of grace to the soul; and that God, through man, pronounces forgiveness of sins upon all who truly repent and turn to Him.

(5.) I believe that, being a means of grace with an outward visible sign, it does, according to the teaching of our Church, in a secondary sense, come under the title of "sacrament," and that our Homilies in that secondary sense do so call it, as having "the promise of forgiveness of sins" (although not exclusively), and an outward sign, imposition of hands, although the grace of forgiveness is not tied or restricted to that act.

It is an entire perversion of the whole question that some have ventured to speak of "priestly power," "spiritual independence," "sacerdotal rights," &c. If a physician goes

about to minister to the sick, bind up the broken, apply to the cure of diseases the medicines which God has given him the knowledge and the skill to use, no one speaks of "assumption of power;" no one thinks it a part of "independence" to die neglected. Why then speak of "priestly power" when people ask the Ministers of God to impart that with which God has entrusted them? Why is it undue "power" to bind up the broken-hearted, to pour into their wounds the wine and oil of penitence, to lift them up when desponding, to loose them, in Christ's Name, from the chains of their sins, and encourage them anew to the conflict? Why, but that to those who know not what the conflict is, what sin is, who have no idea of mental sickness, or anxiety, or distress, all, both sickness and remedy, must seem a dream? To minister to bodily wants is accounted a benefit; to minister to spiritual, which men know not of, is a reproach. In the world, "that they exercise lordship over them are called benefactors;" but even an Apostle had occasion to say, "Am I therefore become your enemy, because I tell you the truth?"

---

"Such as shall be satisfied with a general confession (are) not to be offended with them that do use to their further satisfying the auricular and secret confession to the Priest; nor those also which think needful or convenient, for the quietness of their own consciences, particularly to open their sins to the Priest, to be offended with them that are satisfied with their humble confession to God, and the general confession to the Church. But in all things to follow and keep the rule of charity, and every man to be satisfied with his own conscience, not judging other men's minds or consciences, whereas he hath no warrant of God's Word to the same."—*First Prayer-book of Edward VI.*

### III. HINTS FOR A FIRST CONFESSION.

BY THE REV. E. B. PUSEY, D.D.

It is very desirable that the First Confession should be as complete as you can make it. It is the great turning-point in life—the nearest to Baptism which anything after Baptism can be. For having, as far as you can, brought all your sins before God, in the presence of His priest, having repented of all, and received His pardon for all, you may begin to devote the residue of your life to Him. To facilitate this search into your whole past life, it is best to divide your life into periods, according to any outward changes: *e.g.* of first going to school (if you ever were at one), or of abode, or any marked events of life, which make certain stages in it, or any turning-points either for good or evil. Then in each throw yourself back as much as you can into your former life, thinking with whom you lived, acted, conversed, were intimate; how you employed, amused yourself, your conduct as to church, etc. Try to bring everything before you: each separate scene in every place—the fields, or streets, or houses around your home or abode, your walks, rides, society, loneliness and lonely thoughts, the rooms you lived in, their very furniture—everything helps to recover the memory of your past life, and so bring back (alas!) the memory of some sin.

\* These "Hints" may be had in a separate form, from Messrs. Masters and Co., 78, New Bond Street, London, W., who have kindly consented to this reprint.

*The Good Shepherd.*



“The Son of Man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.”—*St. Luke* xix. 10.

As you recall them, you had better mark them down for yourself, by some abbreviations which others cannot understand, else you might forget them. In any heavier sin, it is best to trace out the beginnings or forerunners of it—(it is, alas! commonly something in childhood); then, when it began to be more against conscience, the length of time it lasted—any aggravations of it—how it ramified into other sins, or in what different forms it appeared; or if it were one in act as well as in thought and word; or, if it were a sin of the senses, what different senses were engaged in it—as the sight, hearing, touch; whether it were resisted, or whether (as will be the case sometimes, *e.g.* as to lies told in childhood or school-days to screen a fault, or to escape blame or punishment) committed almost as often as the temptation occurred (so that if it was not more frequent, it was only that God did not permit the temptation to be so, and any escape from sin was only of God's mercy); or again, whether it was broken off for a time, and again committed.

Some estimate of the frequency of any sin individualises it more. You will thus behold the sinful habit not in the main only, but in so many separate acts of sins, each displeasing to Almighty God. This is often the beginning of true repentance. If you cannot make any estimate of its frequency, you could at least recall the number of years during which it lasted; and in these, whether there were intervals more or less long (as of months), in which you were free from it. As you try thus to trace out your sin year by year (if it unhappily lasted for years), and month by month, you may probably be able to form some nearer estimate of its

amount than when you looked at it only as a confused mass of sin. *Do what you can, and then leave the rest to God.* Take first whatever oppresses you most. When you have gone through this, your mind will be freer for the rest. Always bear in mind the *great mercy* of God, Who bore with us while sinning, did not cast us into hell, and has now brought *you*, as you trust, to repentance. Only so would the sight of sin be endured.

As much as you can, make this examination upon your knees, and in as much stillness as you can—sometimes a past life comes back most vividly in the dark, sometimes at night. Only bend your mind most earnestly to recover the memory of the past, and pray God to enlighten you. Place yourself in the Presence of God whenever you resume it, praying Him for light to know yourself, and for contrition. Look faithfully and most steadfastly to any trace of sin, however dim—it will often come back to the memory if you do not shrink from it. Mingle with your search short prayers to God for mercy, both in order to obtain mercy and true repentance, and because the very tracing out even of sin, as an act of the memory, being an act of the mind, will, in itself, interfere with sorrow. People will often complain that they are sifting themselves just as if they were the sins of some other they were looking into. The very process makes them feel cold and dead. This often cannot be helped at the time—yet it may be mitigated if you take care not to be absorbed in the search even after sins, but dwell upon them singly—recall to yourself who you are—what sin is—Who God Is—against Whom you have sinned—and mingle with the search

prayers for sorrow and pardon. When you have gone through what seems to you to have been the leading sin of your life (if there has been one, which is most likely), then go to any other, either connected with it, or whatever next to it is most on your mind. You will be able to see other things more clearly when these are removed. People can often hardly bear to look on lighter things till they have gone through the heavier. These face them whichever way they look, until the mind has got to the end of them, as far as it can.

Under each head of habitual sins, two things will occupy your mind, first, the grievous character of some acts of the sin: second, the frequency of it. It is best to take these two apart. Conscience is the best guide. They are a separate weight upon it. They weigh it down singly, apart from the whole mass of sin, and the soul feels that it must be discharged of these singly. But, apart from these, we must endeavour to make an estimate of the frequency of each sin. This, in habitual sins, will, at best, be very vague and imperfect; but we must do what we can. If you took no account of it, and now cannot recall it, yet you may make some average of it. Thus, a sin may have been committed under some circumstances, and not under others; at school, and not at home; and this for two or three, or more, years. Or, again, you may have been freed from it, or nearly so, after your Confirmation or first Communion. Or you may have made resolutions to break it off, and kept them for a time, and then relaxed, or been surprised into it again. And this may have taken place repeatedly. Or it may have diminished before you finally broke it off, even

during a whole year. Look as closely as you can into your past life, year by year, month by month, and week by week. People have been able to recall that such or such a deadly sin was committed, at times twice in the week, or even daily. Make such an average, as nearly as you can, for each year; take account of the periods, longer or shorter, during which you were free. It will often be a heavy sum at the end, yet so we shall the rather understand what the debt is, which, if we humble ourselves, God will forgive us, for His dear Son's sake. "My sins have taken such a hold upon me, that I am not able to look up: yea, they are more in number than the hairs of my head, and my heart hath failed me." It is often very miserable to find what very deadly sins a person may have committed, and yet can form no estimate of their number. One by one, they were each, deadly sin against God Who so loved us; each deserved His wrath; and yet we (if it be so), cannot recall how often we so grievously sinned against our good Father and God! You must make such account as you can, and, if you cannot make any estimate, count how many years you were more or less under its dominion, and confess truly all you know of yourself. Thus, it would be a true confession: "during six, seven, eight years of youth, I shrank from all manner of shame or punishment, and told a lie whenever I was tempted (or almost always), to screen myself from either." But then, not to spare shame, it would be best also to confess such lies as are most upon the conscience.

Having thus cleared your mind of its chief sin, go on to others, as they weigh most upon your mind, going through the Ten Command-



ments and the seven deadly sins, observing the beginning of any thing grievous. Then take some full book of self-examination; any full book will do.\* The book of conscience is the fullest, and any other is but as a sort of supplement of it. You will probably thus recall insulated sins, which did not stand out so marked in the mind. And throughout your self-examination note down any sin which occurs to your mind, although not under the head upon which you are examining yourself; for sins often flash across the mind, and are forgotten again, unless noted at the time.

Consider also your life with relation to the means of grace, as calls at different times, through Providence, to yourself or others—Confirmation; first Communion; increase of Communions; sermons or holy books, or inward stirrings; whether there have been fallings off and back in different degrees; disuse of what you found good for your soul, without sufficient reason; want of perseverance; and these, both as aggravations of later sins, and as warnings for the future.

Having gone through this, look at your life as a whole, of which this review will give you the great features or outlines. People will often come thus to see some one thing which has been the bane of their whole life, or has eaten out the good of it—as easiness, desire to please, love of praise, some leading way in which they have been seeking themselves, not God, or self has been their end, even where they hoped they had been doing their duty to God. This review of the past as a whole, will

\* A form of Self-Examination will be found on page 224 of this Manual.

suggest how to strike closer into the narrow way.

With prayers for pardon often ask for grace through this ordinance, saying to this end especially Psalm li. and the "*Veni Creator*," with the longing that He, Whom sin had grieved, would again dwell more fully in your soul. The more you desire, the more God will give. "Open thy mouth wide," He saith, "and I will fill it."

The order of the search into your own conscience need not be the order of the Confession. In the Confession itself, it is best, for the most part to follow out each sin as it developed itself through life, rather than confess the sins of any period of life collectively. You would thus have more insight into the amount of each sin, which contributes much to shame and repentance. It is probable that, after all, unless you should, from circumstances, have been a long time preparing for your First Confession, it will be incomplete. *Let not this trouble you.* God only requires of us faithfulness to do what we can. A Confession avails which contains all you can recall. If other sins come back to your mind afterwards, which you would have confessed had you remembered them, they should be confessed afterwards, because the forgiveness is conditional upon the completeness of the Confession. Completeness implies that there should be care and faithfulness in discovering sins, and that nothing so discovered should be held back; you would not have held it back had you then remembered it. Do not hold it back when you next have the opportunity, and, meantime, your forgiveness is unimpaired, because you virtually confessed

all, in that you confessed all you remembered. Confessions after many years of life, full as they are of blessing, must be but fragments, as it were, of a sad whole, which we cannot recall. But God, as I said, accepts our all as if it were all.

There is no reason to debar yourself from Holy Communion while preparing for the Confession. You have not been debarred before. It seems misplaced that you should now debar yourself, when you are seeking the fuller favour of God. I do not mean that a person *might* not, for the deeper humiliation of himself, and out of a sense of deep unworthiness, abstain for a time from that Heavenly Food. But, ordinarily, when a person has been a communicant for many years, there seems to be no reason why he should, as it were, excommunicate himself, when he is returned to his Father's house, and is wishing only to make his Confession more perfect. What is done in intent, and delayed only in order to make it less imperfect, and more according to the Mind of God, God regards as done.

LORD, TOO LATE HAVE I LOVED THEE,  
MAY I NEVER CEASE TO LOVE THEE.

## IV. BOOKS RECOMMENDED.

---

### THE HOLY BIBLE.

"The S.P.C.K. Commentary on the Bible," including Apocrypha, 7 volumes, price 3/9 each. (The Commentary on the New Testament separately, 2 volumes, price 3/9 each). "The Church Commentary on the New Testament" by Prebendary Sadler, 12 volumes, price 62/-, exclusive of carriage. The volumes may be had separately if desired. Dean Burgon's "Plain Commentary on the Gospels," for devotional study, 5 volumes, price 18/6.

### THE PRAYER BOOK.

"The Book of Common Prayer, with Commentary." (S.P.C.K.) Price 2/4. The Commentary may be had separately, price 1/5.

### THE CHURCH.

"Plain Words on the Holy Catholic Church." Price 2/1.

### CONFIRMATION.

"A Catechism on Confirmation." Price 1½d.  
 "Waiting for the Gift." Price 11d.

### CONFESSION.

"A Help to Repentance." Price 2½d.  
 "Confession and Absolution." Price 4d.  
 "Pardon for the Penitent." Price 2½d.

### HOLY COMMUNION.

"Before the Altar." Price 8d.  
 "The Christian's Handy Book of Prayer." Price 11d.  
 "The Guide to Heaven." Price 11d.  
 "The Treasury of Devotion" (for educated persons). Price 1/11.

These Altar Manuals also contain Forms of Daily Prayer, etc.

### THE CEREMONIES OF THE CHURCH.

"The Congregation in Church." Price 1/6.

ENGLISH CHURCH HISTORY.

"Illustrated Notes on English Church History," in two volumes, to be had and read separately. Price 1/1 each.

DEVOTIONAL READING.

- "The Imitation of Christ." Price 7d.
  - "The Confessions of St. Augustine." Price 2/-
  - "The Hidden Life" (Nepveu). Price 1/8.
  - "An Advent with Jesus." Price 7d.
  - "A Lent with Jesus." Price 7d.
- 

Any of the books named in this list may be had by post, on enclosing name and address, with the title of the book required, and the amount named, (which includes postage), from Mowbray & Co., 106, St. Aldate's Street, Oxford.

## CHAPTER IV.

### I. THE CALENDAR OF THE ENGLISH CHURCH.

#### JANUARY.

1. THE CIRCUMCISION of *our Lord*.
6. THE EPIPHANY, or *Manifestation of Christ to the Gentiles*.
8. St. Lucian, Priest and Martyr at Beauvais, A.D. 290.
13. St. Hilary, Bishop of Poitiers, A.D. 368.
18. St. Prisca, Virgin and Martyr at Rome, A.D. 270.
20. St. Fabian, Bishop of Rome, and Martyr, A.D. 250.
21. St. Agnes, Virgin and Martyr at Rome, A.D. 304.
22. St. Vincent, Deacon and Martyr at Valencia, A.D. 304.
25. CONVERSION of ST. PAUL, A.D. 34.

#### FEBRUARY.

1. Vigil. Fast.
2. PURIFICATION of the *Blessed Virgin Mary*.
3. St. Blasius, Bishop of Sebaste, in Cappadocia, A.D. 316.
5. St. Agatha, Virgin and Martyr in Sicily, A.D. 251.
14. St. Valentine, Bishop and Martyr at Rome, A.D. 270.
23. Vigil. Fast.
24. ST. MATTHIAS, *Apostle and Martyr*.

#### MARCH.

1. St. David, Archbishop of Wales, A.D. 544.
2. St. Chad, Bishop of Lichfield, A.D. 673.
7. St. Perpetua, Martyr at Carthage, A.D. 203.
12. St. Gregory, Bishop of Rome, A.D. 604.
18. St. Edward the Martyr, A.D. 978.
21. St. Benedict, Abbot, A.D. 543.
24. Vigil. Fast.
25. ANNUNCIATION of the *Blessed Virgin Mary*.

APRIL.

3. St. Richard, Bishop of Chichester, A.D. 1253.
4. St. Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, A.D. 397.
19. St. Alphege, Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1012.
23. St. George, Martyr at Nicomedia, A.D. 303.
25. ST. MARK, *Evangelist and Martyr*.

MAY.

1. ST. PHILIP and ST. JAMES, *Apostles and Martyrs*.
3. The Finding of the Holy Cross, A.D. 326.
6. St. John, before the Latin Gate of Rome, A.D. 95.
19. St. Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 988.
26. St. Augustine, Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 604.
27. The Venerable Bede, Monk, A.D. 735.

JUNE.

1. St. Nicomede, Priest and Martyr at Rome, A.D. 90.
5. St. Boniface, Bishop of Mayence, and Martyr, A.D. 775.
11. ST. BARNABAS, *Apostle and Martyr at Cyprus*.
17. St. Alban, First Martyr of Britain, A.D. 303.
20. Translation of the Body of St. Edward the Martyr, A.D. 982.
23. Vigil. Fast.
24. NATIVITY of ST. JOHN BAPTIST.
28. Vigil. Fast.
29. ST. PETER, *Apostle and Martyr*, A.D. 69.

JULY.

2. Visit of the Blessed Virgin Mary to St. Elizabeth.
4. Translation of the Body of St. Martin, A.D. 473.
15. Translation of the Body of St. Swithin, A.D. 971.
20. St. Margaret, Virgin and Martyr at Antioch, A.D. 278.
22. St. Mary Magdalene.
24. Vigil. Fast.
25. ST. JAMES, Apostle and Martyr (*the brother of St. John*), A.D. 43.
26. St. Anne, Mother of the Blessed Virgin Mary.

AUGUST.

- i. Lammas Day, or St. Peter's Deliverance from Prison.
6. Transfiguration of our Blessed LORD.
7. Feast of the Holy Name of JESUS.
10. St. Laurence, Deacon and Martyr, A.D. 253.
23. Vigil. Fast.
24. ST. BARTHOLOMEW, *Apostle and Martyr.*
28. St. Augustine, Bishop of Hippo, A.D. 430.
29. Beheading of St. John Baptist, A.D. 32.

SEPTEMBER.

1. St. Giles, Abbot in France, A.D. 724.
7. St. Enurchus, Bishop of Orleans, A.D. 340.
8. Nativity of the Blessed Virgin Mary.
14. Exaltation of the Holy Cross, A.D. 335.
17. St. Lambert, Bishop of Mæstricht, A.D. 709.
20. Vigil. Fast.
21. ST. MATTHEW, *Apostle, Evangelist and Martyr.*
26. St. Cyprian, Bishop of Carthage, and Martyr, A.D. 258.
29. ST. MICHAEL and ALL ANGELS.
30. St. Jerome, Priest and Doctor of the Church, A.D. 420.

OCTOBER.

1. St. Remigius, Bishop of Rheims, A.D. 533.
6. St. Faith, Virgin and Martyr at Agen, A.D. 290.
9. St. Denys, Bishop and Martyr at Paris, 273.
13. Translation of the Body of St. Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1066.
17. St. Etheldreda, Virgin, Abbess of Ely, A.D. 679.
18. ST. LUKE, *Evangelist and Martyr.*
25. St. Crispin, Martyr at Soissons, A.D. 288.
27. Vigil. Fast.
28. ST. SIMON and ST. JUDE, *Apostles and Martyrs.*
31. Vigil. Fast.

NOVEMBER.

1. ALL SAINTS' DAY.
6. St. Leonard, Abbot at Limoges, A.D. 559.
11. St. Martin, Bishop of Tours, A.D. 397.



13. St. Britius, Bishop of Tours, A.D. 444.
15. St. Machutus, Bishop of Alett, A.D. 564.
17. St. Hugh, Bishop of Lincoln, A.D. 1200.
20. St. Edmund, King of East Anglia, and Martyr, A.D. 870.
22. St. Cecilia, Virgin and Martyr at Rome, A.D. 230.
23. St. Clement, Bishop of Rome and Martyr, A.D. 100.
25. St. Catherine, Virgin and Martyr at Alexandria, A.D. 307.
29. Vigil. Fast.
30. ST. ANDREW, *Apostle and Martyr.*

# DECEMBER.

6. St. Nicholas, Bishop of Myra, A.D. 342.
8. Conception of the Blessed Virgin Mary.
13. St. Lucy, Virgin and Martyr in Sicily, A.D. 304.
16. O Sapientia.
20. Vigil. Fast.
21. ST. THOMAS, *Apostle and Martyr.*
24. Vigil. Fast.
25. CHRISTMAS DAY.
26. ST. STEPHEN, *Deacon and Martyr*, A.D. 34.
27. ST. JOHN, *Apostle, Evangelist, and Martyr*, A.D. 101.
28. THE HOLY INNOCENTS.
31. St. Sylvester, Bishop of Rome, A.D. 335.

## SAINTS COMMEMORATED IN THE

THE HOLY APOSTLES, &c.	MARTYRS IN THE AGE OF PERSECUTIONS.	
The Blessed Virgin Mary.	St. Nicomede.	A. D. 90
St. Michael and All Angels.	St. Dionysius.	96
All Saints.	St. Clement.	100
St. John the Baptist.	St. Perpetua.	203
St. Peter.	St. Cecilia.	230
St. James the Great.	St. Fabian.	250
St. John the Evangelist.	St. Agatha.	251
St. Andrew.	St. Lawrence.	258
St. Philip.	St. Cyprian.	258
St. Thomas.	St. Valentine.	270
St. Bartholomew.	St. Prisca.	275
St. Matthew.	St. Margaret.	278
St. James the Less.	St. Lucian.	290
St. Simon Zelotes.	St. Faith.	290
St. Jude.	St. Agnes.	304
St. Matthias.	St. Vincent.	304
St. Paul.	St. Lucy.	305
St. Barnabas.	St. Catherine.	307
St. Mark.	St. Crispin.	308
St. Luke.	St. Blasius.	316
St. Stephen.		
The Holy Innocents.		
St. Mary Magdalene.		
St. Anne.		

CALENDAR OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND.

MARTYRS & OTHER SAINTS SPECIALLY CONNECTED WITH ENGLAND.		FRENCH & OTHER SAINTS NOT INCLUDED AMONG THE PRECEDING.	
	A.D.		A. D.
St. George.	290	St. Silvester.	335
St. Alban.	303	St. Enurchus.	340
St. Nicolas.	326	St. Hilary of Poitiers.	368
St. Benedict.	543	St. Ambrose.	397
St. David.	544	St. Martin.	397
St. Machutus.	560	St. Jerome.	420
St. Gregory.	604	St. Augustine.	430
St. Augustine of Canterbury.	604	St. Britius.	444
St. Etheldreda.	670	St. Remigius.	535
St. Chad.	673	St. Leonard.	559
St. Giles.	725	St. Lambert.	709
Venerable Bede.	735		
St. Boniface.	755		
St. Swithin.	862		
St. Edmund.	870		
St. Edward.	978		
St. Dunstan.	988		
St. Alphege.	1012		
St. Edward the Confessor.	1163		
St. Hugh.	1200		
St. Richard.	1253		

## ADDENDA TO CALENDAR.

The following Commemorations may also be of interest :  
*a.* signifies the Calendar of the Ven. Bede ; *b.* Sarum ;  
*c.* Roman ; *d.* Eastern ; *e.* Abp. Laud (Scotch P.B.) :—

Jan.	11.	St. David, King.	<i>e.</i>
"	17.	St. Anthony, (Hermit).	<i>a. b. c. d.</i>
"	19.	St. Wulfstan, Bishop of Worcester.	<i>b. c.</i>
"	20.	St. Sebastian, Martyr.	<i>a. b. c.</i>
"	24.	St. Timothy, Bishop.	<i>c.</i>
"	26.	St. Polycarp, Bishop and Martyr.	<i>c.</i>
"	27.	St. Chrysostom, Bishop.	<i>c. d.</i>
"	28.	St. Cyril (Alex), Bishop.	<i>e.</i>
"	30.	King Charles I., Martyr.	
Feb.	1.	St. Ignatius, Bishop and Martyr.	<i>d.</i>
"	18.	St. Colman, Bishop and Confessor.	<i>e.</i>
March	7.	St. Thomas Aquinas, Confessor.	<i>c.</i>
"	9.	The XL. of Sebaste, Martyrs.	<i>a. c. d.</i>
"	11.	St. Constantine, King.	<i>e.</i>
"	17.	St. Patrick, Bishop.	<i>b. c.</i>
"	19.	St. Joseph (Spouse of the Blessed Virgin Mary).	<i>c.</i>
"	20.	St. Cuthbert, Bishop.	<i>a. b. c. e.</i>
April	1.	St. Gilbert, Bishop.	<i>e.</i>
"	11.	St. Leo the Great, Pope.	<i>c.</i>
"	21.	St. Anselm, Bishop.	<i>c.</i>
"	26.	St. Symeon.	<i>d.</i>
May	2.	St. Athanasius, Bishop.	<i>c. d.</i>
"	4.	St. Monica, Confessor.	<i>c.</i>
"	9.	St. Gregory Nazianzen, Bishop.	<i>c.</i>
"	20.	St. Basil, Bishop.	<i>a.</i>
"	25.	St. Adhelm of Salisbury, Bishop.	<i>a.</i>
June	1.	St. Justin Martyr.	<i>d.</i>
"	9.	St. Columba, Abbot.	<i>e.</i>
"	10.	St. Margaret (Queen).	<i>c. e.</i>
"	16.	St. Osmund of Salisbury, Bishop.	<i>b.</i>
"	19.	Sts. Gervasius and Protasius, Martyrs.	<i>a. b. c.</i>
July	7.	St. Palladius, Bishop.	<i>e.</i>
"	17.	St. Kenelm, Martyr.	<i>b.</i>
Aug.	2.	St. Stephen, Pope and Martyr.	<i>a. b. c.</i>
"	5.	St. Oswald of Northumbria, King.	<i>b. e.</i>
"	6.	St. Xystus, Pope and Martyr.	<i>a. c.</i>
"	15.	Falling Asleep of the Blessed Virgin Mary.	<i>d.</i>
"	20.	St. Bernard, Abbot.	<i>c.</i>
"	25.	St. Hilda, Virgin.	<i>e.</i>
"	31.	St. Aidan, Bishop.	<i>c. e.</i>

Sept.	16.	St. Ninian, Bishop.	<i>e.</i>
"	20.	St. Eustace, Martyr.	<i>c.</i>
"	22.	St. Maurice, Martyr.	<i>a. b. c.</i>
"	23.	St. Thecla, Virgin.	<i>b. c.</i>
"	28.	St. Wenceslaus, King.	<i>c.</i>
Oct.	4.	St. Francis of Assisi, Confessor.	<i>c.</i>
	—	St. Edwin, King of Northumbria, Martyr.	
"	10.	St. Paulinus of York, Bishop.	<i>a. c.</i>
"	11.	St. Philip the Deacon.	<i>d.</i>
"	12.	St. Wilfrid of York, Bishop.	<i>c.</i>
"	19.	St. Frideswide, Virgin.	<i>b.</i>
"	23.	St. Adamnan, Abbot.	<i>b. e.</i>
Nov.	2.	All Souls.	
"	3.	St. Winifrid.	<i>b. c.</i>
"	14.	St. Erkenwald, Bishop of London.	<i>b. c.</i>
"	27.	St. Gregory Thaumaturgus.	<i>c.</i>
Dec.	3.	St. Birinus of Dorchester, Bishop.	<i>c.</i>
	—	St. Francis Xavier.	<i>c.</i>
"	4.	St. Drostane, Abbot.	<i>e.</i>
"	29.	St. Thomas of Canterbury, Martyr.	<i>b.</i>

---

Nov. 2. The Commemoration of the faithful departed on All Souls' Day was removed from the Calendar on account of abuses formerly connected with its observance. Now that these abuses no longer exist, it seems desirable to restore the observance of this day.

---

The Festival of Corpus Christi, in honour of the institution of the Blessed Sacrament of the Body and Blood of Christ, is observed upon the first free Thursday after Trinity Sunday.

## II. TABLES AND RULES

*For the Moveable and Immoveable Feasts: together with the Days of Fasting and Abstinence, through the whole Year.*

RULES to know when the Moveable Feasts and Holy Days begin.

**E**ASTER-DAY (on which the rest depend) is always the First Sunday after the Full Moon which happens upon, or next after the Twenty-first Day of March; and if the Full Moon happens upon a Sunday, Easter-Day is the Sunday after.

Advent-Sunday is always the nearest Sunday to the Feast of Saint Andrew, whether before or after.

Septuagesima	} Sunday is	Nine	} Weeks before
Sexagesima		Eight	
Quinquagesima		Seven	
Quadragesima		Six	
Rogation-Sunday	} is	Five Weeks	} after Easter.
Ascension-Day		Forty Days	
Whit-Sunday		Seven Weeks	
Trinity-Sunday		Eight Weeks	

A TABLE of all the Feasts that are to be observed in the Church of England throughout the Year.

All Sundays in the Year.

The Days of the Feasts of	{	The Circumcision of our LORD JESUS CHRIST.
		The Epiphany.—The Conversion of <i>St. Paul</i> .
		The Purification of the Blessed Virgin.
		<i>St. Matthias</i> the Apostle.
		The Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin.
		<i>St. Mark</i> the Evangelist.
		<i>St. Philip</i> and <i>St. James</i> the Apostles.
		The Ascension of our LORD JESUS CHRIST.
		<i>St. Barnabas</i> .—The Nativity of <i>St. John</i> Baptist.
		<i>St. Peter</i> the Apostle.— <i>St. James</i> the Apostle.
		<i>St. Bartholomew</i> the Apostle.
		<i>St. Matthew</i> the Apostle.
		<i>St. Michael</i> and All Angels.
		<i>St. Luke</i> the Evangelist.
		<i>St. Simon</i> and <i>St. Jude</i> , the Apostles.
		All Saints.— <i>St. Andrew</i> the Apostle.
		<i>St. Thomas</i> the Apostle.—The Nativity of our LORD.
		<i>St. Stephen</i> the Martyr.— <i>St. John</i> the Evangelist.
		The Holy Innocents.

Monday and Tuesday in Easter-Week.

Monday and Tuesday in Whitsun-Week.

### III. A TABLE OF THE VIGILS, FASTS, AND DAYS OF ABSTINENCE

TO BE OBSERVED IN THE YEAR.

---

#### *The Evens or Vigils before*

The Nativity of our LORD.	<i>St. John Baptist.</i>
The Purification of the Blessed Virgin <i>Mary.</i>	<i>St. Peter.</i>
The Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin.	<i>St. James.</i>
<i>Easter-Day.</i>	<i>St. Bartholomew.</i>
<i>Ascension-Day.</i>	<i>St. Matthew.</i>
<i>Pentecost.</i>	<i>St. Simon and St. Jude.</i>
<i>St. Matthias.</i>	<i>St. Andrew.</i>
	<i>St. Thomas.</i>
	All Saints.

Note, that if any of these Feast-Days fall upon a *Monday*, then the Vigil or Fast-Day shall be kept upon the *Saturday*, and not upon the *Sunday* next before it.

---

#### *Day of Fasting, or Abstinence.*

##### I. The Forty Days of Lent.

- II. The Ember-Days at the Four Seasons being the *The First Sunday in Lent.*  
*Wednesday, Friday, and The Feast of Pentecost.*  
*Saturday after ..... September 14.*  
*December 13.*

##### III. The Three Rogation-Days, being the *Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday, before Holy Thursday, or the Ascension of our LORD.*

##### IV. All the *Fridays* in the Year except CHRISTMAS-DAY.

# IV. A TABLE OF KINDRED AND AFFINITY, WHEREIN

WHOSOEVER ARE RELATED ARE FORBIDDEN IN SCRIPTURE  
AND OUR LAWS TO MARRY TOGETHER.

The following Table contains in an abbreviated form all the relationships forbidden in the Book of Common Prayer. The relations of the man only are named below, but the same rules apply to those of the woman also. The prohibition extends to three classes of possible relationship: one by birth, and two by marriage or affinity.

A man may not marry his own relative by blood within the third degree	his mother - - - -	} 1st degree.
	his daughter - - - -	
	his sister or half-sister - -	} 2nd degree.
	his grandmother - - -	
	his granddaughter - - -	
	his aunt - - - -	} 3rd degree.
	his niece - - - -	

A man may not marry any of his wife's relatives nearer in blood than he can his own, <i>i.e.</i> within the third degree	her mother - - - -	} 1st degree.
	her daughter - - - -	
	her sister or half-sister - -	} 2nd degree.
	her grandmother - - -	
	her granddaughter - - -	
	her aunt - - - -	} 3rd degree.
	her niece - - - -	

A man may not marry the widow of his own relative by blood within the third degree	his father's - - - -	} 1st degree.
	his son's - - - -	
	his brother's or half-brother's	} 2nd degree.
	his grandfather's - - -	
	his grandson's - - -	
	his uncle's - - - -	} 3rd degree.
	his nephew's - - - -	

Reprinted from *Marriage with a Deceased Wife's Sister*,  
by Philadelphus, 1885, p. 28.



# INDEX TO ILLUSTRATIONS.

---

	<i>Page</i>
1 CHRIST in the Church . . . .	10
2 Our LORD with St. Augustine and St. Aidan . . . .	64
3 The Consecration of Archbishop Parker . . . .	96
4 St. Augustine's Chair . . . .	108
5 The Incarnation . . . .	154
6 The Annunciation . . . .	161
7 The Nativity . . . .	166
8 The Worship of the Magi . . . .	168
9 The Holy Family . . . .	170
10 The Man of Sorrows . . . .	174
11 The Crucifixion . . . .	177
12 The Resurrection . . . .	186
13 The Ascension . . . .	193
14 The Descent of THE HOLY GHOST . . . .	203
15 The Ten Commandments . . . .	218
16 The Baptism of CHRIST . . . .	241
17 The Institution of the Holy Eucharist . . . .	244
18 THE LORD'S Prayer . . . .	282
19 Reading from The Great Bible . . . .	308
20 The High Altar and Reredos of St. Paul's Cathedral . . . .	324
21 The Ornaments' Rubric . . . .	330
22 The Good Shepherd . . . .	356

## INDEX TO AUTHORS.

## ANCIENT AUTHORS QUOTED.

- St. Ambrose, 200, 253, 267.  
 St. Athanasius, 160 note.  
 St. Augustine, 137, 138, 145, 146, 151, 213, 214, 223, 230,  
 254 note, 258, 259, 277, 293, 294, 309, 316, 321, 329,  
 331, 336.  
 St. Basil, 199, 231.  
 Bede, 71 note, 75, 243 note.  
 St. Bernard, 178, 216.  
 St. Chrysostom, 194, 336.  
 St. Clement of Rome, 29.  
 St. Cyprian, 34, 46, 54, 104,  
 St. Cyril of Jerusalem, 208.  
 St. Hippolytus, 155.  
 St. Ignatius, 33.  
 St. Irenæus, 35, 44 note, 255 note.  
 St. Jerome, 46, 316.  
 St. John Damascene, 159 note, 277.  
 Tertullian, 34, 337.  
 Vincent of Lerins, xxiv., 117.

## MODERN AUTHORS QUOTED.

- Andrewes, Bp., 230, 266.  
 Bramhall, Archbp., 94 note, 240 note.  
 Bright, 65, 67, 68, 164 note, 259.  
 Carter, 57, 97, 104, 299 note.  
 Chocarne, 299.  
 Church, 163.  
 Comber, 269.  
 Cosin, Bp., 234, 270.  
 Courayer, 101.  
 Dixon, 99.  
 Döllinger, 105, 106, 316.  
 Edersheim, 256.

- Faber, 179, 217.  
Forbes, Bp., 99 note, 128, 145, 152, 274, 275.  
Haddan, 98, 100, 101.  
Hall, Bp., 164.  
Herbert, 232.  
Hooker, 33, 296.  
Hutchings, 202.  
Keble, 122, 131, 172, 183.  
Laud, Archbp., 120 note, 322 note.  
Liddon, 28 etc., 137, 223, 260 note, 279, 281 note, 293 note,  
311, 312, 315, 318, 319, 327, 328.  
Lightfoot, Bp., 70, 71, 75, 76, 162 note, 338 note.  
Lingard, 101, 103.  
Manning, 295 note.  
Moore, 81 note, 88 note, 94.  
Montalembert, 72.  
Mozley, 293 note.  
Neale, 24, 114 note, 231, 256.  
Newman, 51, 52, 56, 310, 311.  
Priest's Prayer Book, the, 100 note.  
Puller, 42, 43, 45, 46, 258.  
Pusey, ix. 35 note, 51 note, 59, 60 note, 61, 62, 85, 117,  
118, 182, 183, 212, 214, 229, 251, 322, 352 etc., 355 etc.  
Sanderson, Bp., 31.  
Sparrow, Bp., 260.  
Stanley, 108.  
Taylor, Bp., 240, 260.  
Trench, Archbp., 80, 81, 82, 83, 86, 87

## INDEX TO TEXTS.

		PAGE			PAGE
GENESIS.			I CHRONICLES.		
i. 1	...	138, 144	xxix. 14	...	232
i. 2	...	144, 201	II CHRONICLES.		
i. 13	...	152	xxvi. 18	...	337
i. 26, 27	...	148, 235	NEHEMIAH.		
iii. 15	150, 173, 175		i. 11	...	284
iii. 24	...	147	JOB.		
xviii. 18	...	4	iv. 18	...	140
EXODUS.			xv. 15	...	140
iii. 14	...	139	xxxviii. 7	...	146
xiii. 2	...	162	PSALMS.		
xix. 6	...	337	ii. 2	...	304
xx. 3-18	...	218	xvi. 11	...	187
xxv. 30	...	248	xviii. 10	...	147
xxix. 29, 30	...	24	xx. 1	...	284
xxix. 36, etc.	...	247	xxxiii. 6	...	144
LEVITICUS.			xxxiii. 9	...	144
ix. 7 etc.	...	247	xxxvii. 32	...	221
xiv. 19	...	247	li. 5	...	150
xvii. 11	...	175	lv. 18	...	230
xxiv. 5 etc.	...	248	lxix. 37	...	284
NUMBERS.			lxxiv. 13	...	279
x. 10	...	248	lxxxvii. 1	...	325
xviii. 7	...	17	xc. 2	...	140
xx. 24	...	24	cx. 4	...	15
DEUTERONOMY.			cxix. 164	...	230
x. 13	...	221	PROVERBS.		
xiv. 2	...	4	xxiv. 16	...	287
xxxiii. 2	...	211			

	PAGE		PAGE
ECCLESIASTES.		x. 22	300
xii. 7	215	x. 29	140
ISAIAH.		xii. 31	200
i. 10-16	327	xiii. 29	120
vi. 1-6	140, 147, 336	xvi. 18	12, 13, 53, 191
vii. 14	314	xix. 5, 6	273
xi. 2, 3	261	xix. 9	274
xiv. 32	11	xix. 17	140, 221
liii. 6	175	xix. 26	279
JEREMIAH.		xix. 28	7
i. 5	159	xxv. 31, 32	181, 199
LAMENTATIONS.		xxv. 41	216
i. 12	174	xxvi. 26 etc.	246
DANIEL.		xxvii. 64	187
vii. 9-15	314	xxviii. 16	19
HOSEA.		xxviii. 18-20, 17, 19, 36, 37, 39, 50, 126, 194, 242	
xi. 1	169	ST. MARK.	
JOEL.		iv. 28	299
ii. 28	204	vi. 13	238
ii. 32	51	x. 27	140
MICAH.		xi. 24	278
v. 2	165, 314	xiii. 26 etc.	197
ZECHARIAH.		xiv. 38	288
xi. 12	314	xvi. 2, 6	188
xii. 10	314	xvi. 12	191
WISDOM.		xvi. 19	194
vi. 10	301	ST. LUKE.	
ST. MATTHEW.		i. 15	159
i. 25	162	i. 28	160
ii. 11	168	i. 34	160, 201
iii. 13 etc.	171, 241	i. 35	162, 200
v. 7	288	i. 37	140
v. 17	6, 314	i. 38	164
v. 32	274	ii. 11	167
vi. 2, 5, 16	229	ii-22, 23	162
		ii. 49	171
		ii. 51	170
		iii. 22	31
		vi. 12, 13	16, 272
		x. 16	17
		x. 18	147
		xvi. 19	181

		PAGE			PAGE
xvii. 21	...	285	xx. 21	...	16, 29, 31
xvii. 30	...	198	xx. 22, 23	...	39, 191
xix. 10	...	356		ACTS.	
xxii. 27	...	25	i. 3	...	190, 238
xxiv. 25-27	...	175	i. 4, 8	...	204
xxiv. 44	...	313	ii. 38	...	263
xxiv. 49	...	204	ii. 42	...	34
xxiv. 50	...	193	v. 3, 4	...	201
xxiv. 51	...	194	vi. 6	...	21
	ST. JOHN.		vii. 38	...	5
i. 9	...	207	vii. 51	...	303
i. 14	...	47, 49, 155	viii. 12 etc.	...	262
i. 17	...	47	viii. 30, 31	...	321
ii. 19, 21	...	189	x. 37, 38	...	31
iii. 1-14	...	294, 295	xiii. 3	...	272
iii. 5	...	242	xvii. 28	...	278
iv. 22	...	6	xix. 1 etc.	...	262
iv. 24	...	139		ROMANS.	
iv. 34	...	179, 286	i. 20	...	138
v. 27	...	198	iii. 19	...	130
v. 28	...	215	v. 1	...	301
v. 39	...	314	v. 12	...	215, 236
vi. 27	...	287	vi. 12	...	285
viii. 20	...	179	vii. 21	...	150
x. 18	...	189	viii. 11	...	216
x. 28	...	305	viii. 21	...	294
x. 35	...	315	viii. 29	...	158, 291
xi. 44	...	271	viii. 30	...	302
xiv. 2	...	195	viii. 33	...	300
xiv. 6	...	49	ix. 4, 5	...	5
xiv. 14	...	278	x. 10	...	136
xiv. 16, 17	...	36, 37, 205	xii. 5	...	210
xiv. 21	...	221	xiii. 10	...	221
xiv. 26	...	49		I CORINTHIANS.	
xv. 5	...	48	ii. 9	...	217
xv. 16	...	17	iii. 16, 17	...	201
xv. 24	...	216	iv. 1	...	18, 38
xvi. 7	...	192	v. 13	...	51
xvi. 13	...	49	ix. 27	...	299
xvi. 16, 28	...	192	x. 12	...	299, 304
xvii. 6	...	284	x. 16	...	244
xx. 5	...	188	xi. 23-27	...	39, 247, 249
xx. 14, 19	...	191			
xx. 19-24	...	264, 265			

	PAGE
xv. 17 ...	189
xv. 21 ...	186
xv. 22 ...	237
xv. 28 ...	140
xv. 37 ...	215

## II CORINTHIANS.

iv. 7 ...	18
v. 10 ...	216
v. 20 ...	17
v. 21 ...	175
vi. 1 ...	291, 303
vii. 1 ...	304

## GALATIANS.

ii. 20 ...	281
ii. 21 ...	291
iii. 24 ...	7
iii. 27 ...	242
iv. 4 ...	6, 154

## EPHESIANS.

i. 9 etc ...	290
i. 10, 22 ...	158
i. 21 ...	147
ii. 12 ...	6
ii. 20 ...	25
iii. 9 ...	144
iii. 20 ...	293
iv. 4-6 ...	54
iv. 8 ...	196
v. 25 ...	303
v. 27 ...	209
v. 32 ...	273

## PHILIPPIANS.

i. 6 ...	303
ii. 8 ...	178
ii. 10 ...	335
iii. 12, 13 ...	299

## COLOSSIANS.

i. 15 ...	158
i. 16 ...	147
i. 18 ...	13
ii. 10 ...	158

## I THESSALONIANS.

	PAGE
iv. 16 ...	147
iv. 17 ...	198

## I TIMOTHY.

i. 15 ...	127
ii. 4 ...	290
iii. 15 ...	50, 319
iv. 9 ...	127
iv. 14 ...	21
v. 22 ...	21
vi. 10 ...	232
vi. 20 ...	127

## II TIMOTHY.

i. 1 ...	21
i. 12 ...	127
i. 13, 14 ...	35, 127
i. 16, 18 ...	212
ii. 2 ...	35
ii. 11 ...	127
iv. 7, 8 ...	304

## TITUS.

i. 9 ...	127
iii. 5 ...	243, 263, 296
iii. 8 ...	127

## HEBREWS.

i. 6 ...	165
i. 14 ...	146, 147
ii. 10 ...	158
iii. 1 ...	25, 31
iv. 12, 13 ...	141
v. 1 ...	337
v. 6, 10 ...	15, 25
vi. 1, 2 ...	263
vi. 4 etc. ...	303
vi. 20 ...	15, 195
vii. 1, 17, 21 ...	15
vii. 25 ...	196
vii. 26 ...	175
ix. 22 ...	175
ix. 24 ...	195
x. 3 ...	249

	PAGE
xi. 3 ...	143
xi. 6 ...	137
xii. 14 ...	302
xii. 22, 23 ...	210, 211

## ST. JAMES.

i. 15 ...	223
v. 14, 15 ...	238, 267, 275

## I ST. PETER.

i. 2 ...	291
ii. 5, 9 ...	337
ii. 24 ...	175
ii. 25 ...	25, 31
iii. 19 ...	180
iii. 21 ...	242
iii. 22 ...	147
iv. 6 ...	180

## II ST. PETER.

i. 10 ...	291, 292
i. 21 ...	309
iii. 9 ...	291

## I ST. JOHN.

	PAGE
i. 9 ...	268
ii. 19 ...	303
iii. 4 ...	223
iii. 8 ...	148
iv. 19 ...	233, 300
v. 16 ...	224

## ST. JUDE.

verse 3 ...	49, 116
" 6 ...	147
" 9 ...	147
" 20 ...	125

## REVELATION.

i. 6 ...	337
i. 11 ...	53
i. 12 etc. ...	10, 30
i. 18 ...	189
iv. 11 ...	325
v. 6 ...	195
xiv. 12 ...	125
xx. 11-13 ...	198
xxi. 9 ...	47



## GENERAL INDEX.

- 
- Aaronic Priesthood, 14, 15, 23, 337.  
 Abraham, 4, 14.  
 Absolution, 39, 191, 264 etc., 353.  
 Abstinence, Days of, 375.  
 Agapæ, 257.  
 Aidan, St., 64, 70, 71.  
 Alban, St., 65.  
 Alexandria, Patriarchate of, 44.  
 Alfred the Great, iii.  
 Almsgiving, 232.  
 Altar-crosses, 332, 335.  
 Altar-lights, 329 note, 332.  
 Amendment, 271.  
 Angels of the Churches, 10, 30.  
     „ Creation of, 146.  
     „ Fall of, 147.  
     „ Ranks of, 147.  
 Anglican Church, Bishops of, 111 etc.  
     „ Orders, 97 etc.  
     „ Principle as to the Truth, 115 etc., 321, 322.  
 Anglo-Saxon Church, 74 etc.  
 Annates, 80.  
 Anointing of the Sick, 274.  
 Antioch, Patriarchate of, 43.  
 Apocrypha, the, 312, 315.  
 Apostles, the Twelve, 16, 25 etc., 34.  
 Apostolic, the Church, 209.  
     „ Succession, 19 etc., 94.  
     „ „ in See of Canterbury, 109.  
 Appeals to Rome, 82, 92.  
 Arian Heresy, 37, 57, 129.  
 Ariminum, Council of, 66.  
 Arles, Council of, 66.  
 Articles, the, vi. 316, viii. 119, 131, xi. 300, xiii. 301,  
     xx. 321, xxii. 185, 211, xxv. 301, xxxi. 249 etc.  
 Articles of the Faith, 136 etc.

- Ascension, the, 192 etc.  
 Assurance, 303, 304.  
 Athanasius, St., 129.  
 Athanasius, St., Creed of, 119, 129.  
 Atonement, Day of, 195.  
 Augustine, St., of Canterbury, 64, 68, 69.  
     "    "    Chair of, 108.  
 Bangor, Conference at, 69.  
 Baptism of CHRIST, 171, 241.  
     "    Effects of, 243.  
     "    Infant, 237 note, 242, 304 etc.  
     "    Holy, 39, 123, 214, 242 etc., 294 etc.  
     "    "    Notes on, 339 etc.  
     "    Lay, 39 note.  
 Baptismal Vows, 124, 243, 263, 340.  
 Barlow, Bishop, 99, 101.  
 Belief, 125.  
 Bible, the Holy, 309 etc.  
     "    "    Contents of, 312 etc.  
     "    "    Inspiration of, 202, 309 etc.  
     "    "    Interpretation of, 115 etc., 321, 322.  
 Birinus, 73.  
 Birth of CHRIST, 165.  
     "    the New, 242, 294 etc.  
 Birth-sin, 150.  
 Bishops, 25 etc., 90.  
     "    Grades amongst, 41 etc.  
     "    of the Anglican Church, 111 etc.  
 Body of CHRIST, the Church, 13, 40, 61, 206.  
 Body, the Resurrection of, 215.  
 Books recommended, 364.  
 Bowing, 335, 336.  
 Brethren of the LORD, the, 162 note.  
 British Church, the, 44 note, 65 etc.  
 Burial of CHRIST, 185.  
     "    "    the Dead, Notes on, 347 etc.  
 Calendar, the, 366 etc.  
 Canon of Scripture, 313 note, 320.  
 Canons quoted, 261, 335, 341.  
 Canterbury, 69.  
     "    Succession in the See of, 109.  
 Cardinal Virtues, 233.  
 Catholic, the Church, 208.  
 Causes of Reformation, 78 etc.  
 Celtic Mission, the, 70 etc.  
 Census, Tax of the, 79.

Census, Religious, of the Church, 60 note.

Ceremonial, 327 etc.

Chalcedon, Council of, 45.

Chalice, the Mixed, 246, 332.

Charity, 233.

CHRIST, Ascension of, 192.

„ Baptism of, 171, 241.

„ Birth of, 165.

„ Burial of, 185.

„ Circumcision of, 167.

„ Conception of, 160.

„ Descent into Hell, 180 etc.

„ our Food, 287.

„ the Head of the Church, 196, 206.

„ Name of, 171.

„ Two Natures of, 156.

„ Obedience of, 178.

„ Prophet, Priest, and King, 15, 16, 172.

„ Our Representative, 179.

„ Resurrection of, 185 etc.

„ Sacrifice of, 176, 195, 251.

„ The Second Adam, 179, 236 etc.

„ Second Coming of, 196 etc.

„ The Sin-Bearer, 175.

„ Sinlessness of, 175.

„ Sufferings of, 173, 175.

„ Temptation of, 172.

„ Transfiguration of, 173.

Christian Church, the 7.

„ Course, the, 290 etc.

Church, the, the Ark of Safety, 50 etc.

„ the Body of CHRIST, 13, 40, 61, 206, 210.

„ the Bride of CHRIST, 47, 53, 209.

„ a Covenanted Sphere, 206, 207.

„ Divisions in, 53 etc.

„ Foundation of, 11.

„ the Home of the Truth, 49 etc., 319 etc.

„ the Kingdom of GOD, 190, 260.

„ the Ministry of, 14 etc.

„ Notes of, 208.

„ Office of, 206.

„ Precepts of, 234.

„ the Sphere of Grace, 48 etc.

„ Unity of, 53 etc.

Church and State, vi., vii.

Churching of Women, Notes on the, 341 etc

- Clergy, 17.
- Colours, the Ecclesiastical, 333 etc.
- Commandments, the, 218 etc.
- „ „ Sins against, 224 etc.
- Communion, Fasting, 256 etc., 347, 350.
- Communion, the Holy, 254 etc.
- „ Notes on, 350 etc.
- Communion of Saints, the, 210 etc.
- Conception, the Immaculate, 116, 159.
- Conference at Bangor, 69.
- „ Lambeth, 119 note.
- „ Whitby, 74.
- Confession, 93, 214, 234, 265, 268 etc., 352 etc., 355 etc.
- „ Form of, 269.
- Confirmation, 261 etc.
- Conscience, 136, 219.
- Constantinople, the Council of, 57.
- „ the Creed of, 57.
- „ the Patriarchate of, 44.
- Contrition, 268.
- Conversion, 243, 295, 297 etc.
- Conversion of England, 65 etc.
- Councils, General, 37, 58, 90, 93, 94, 119, 120 note.
- „ „ acknowledged by English Church, 94, 119.
- Council of Ariminum, 66.
- „ Arles, 66.
- „ Chalcedon, 45.
- „ Constantinople, 57, 129.
- „ Ephesus, 164 note.
- „ Nicæa, 56, 129.
- „ Trent, 89, 115.
- Course, the Christian, 290 etc.
- Covenant, the Baptismal, 123 etc., 340.
- Covenanted Grace, 38 etc., 48, 52.
- Creation, the, 143 etc.
- „ of Angels, 146.
- „ of Man, 148, 235, 236.
- Creeds, the, 119, 126 etc.
- „ the Apostles', 127.
- „ the Athanasian, 129.
- „ the Nicene, 56, 129.
- „ Comparison of the, 130.
- Cross, Altar, 332, 335.
- „ Sign of the, 336, 340.
- „ Words from the, 176.
- Customs, Pious, 335.

- Deacons, 25.
- Dead, Burial of the, Notes on, 347 etc.
- Deadly Sin, 223, 224.
- Death, 215.
- „ of Christ, 178.
- Deceased-wife's sister, 376.
- Denial, Self-, 231.
- Departed, the, 181, 210 etc.
- „ Prayer for, 212, 252, 347, 349.
- Descent into Hell, the, 180.
- „ of the HOLY GHOST, 204.
- Development, 50, 116.
- Devil, the, 147, 175, 216.
- Diversity in teaching, 119 etc.
- „ of ritual, 329 etc.
- Divisions in the Church, 53 etc.
- Divorce, 273.
- “Do this,” 247.
- Duties, the Notable, 229.
- Duty to GOD, 222.
- „ neighbour, 222.
- Easter-controversy, the, 74 etc.
- Eastward-position, the, 329 note.
- Ecclesiastical Books, 315.
- „ Colours, 333 etc.
- Edwin, King, 70.
- Edward III., 80.
- „ VI., First Prayer Book of, 98, 275, 354 note.
- „ „ Ordinal of, 98, 103.
- Effects of Baptism, 243.
- „ Sin, 223.
- Elders, 25, 26.
- Election, 290.
- Elizabeth, Queen, 89, 99.
- Ember Seasons, 272.
- Ephesus, Council of, 164 note.
- Episcopate, the, 26.
- „ of Divine institution, 30.
- „ the Bond of Unity, 33.
- „ the Fount of the Ministry, 32.
- „ the Guardian of the Truth, 34.
- „ the Instrument of Grace, 38.
- „ St. Cyprian on, 54.
- Establishment, the, vi. etc.
- Ethelbert, King, 68.
- Eucharist, the Holy, 245 etc., 326.

- Eucharist, the Holy, Institution of, 39, 245.  
 Eucharistic Feast, the, 254 etc.  
   ,, Sacrifice, the, 196, 247 etc., 333, 337, 349.  
   ,, Worship, 326, 332, 333.  
 Evangelical Revival, the, iv., v.  
 Everlasting, the Life, 215, 217.  
   ,, Punishment, 216.  
 Ever-Virgin, 160 note.  
 Evil, the Origin of, 150 etc.  
 Examination, Self-, 355 etc.  
 Examination, Self-, Form of, 224 etc.  
 Existence of GOD, 136 etc.  
 Faith, 136, 233.  
 Faith, the, 34.  
   ,, of the Church, 125 etc.  
   ,, the Rule of, 126.  
 Faith and Practice, x., 124.  
 Fall of the Angels, the, 147.  
   ,, Man, the, 3, 149, 194, 236.  
 Fasting, 231.  
   ,, before Communion, 256 etc., 347, 350.  
   ,, Days of, 344, 375.  
 Felix the Burgundian, 73.  
 Festivals, list of, 374.  
 Filioque Clause, the, 56.  
 Final Perseverance, 303 etc.  
 First Confession, Hints for, 355 etc.  
 Forbidden Degrees, Table of, 376.  
 Forgiveness of Sins, 214, 287.  
   ,, of others, 288.  
 Fortitude, 234.  
 Forty Days, the Great, 189.  
 Foundation of the Church, 11.  
   ,, ,, Ministry, 14.  
 Freewill, 3, 151, 219, 292 etc.  
 Friars, the, 86.  
 Gentiles, the, 6.  
 Gethsemane, 176, 285.  
 GHOST, the HOLY, 199 etc., 302, 309 etc.  
   ,, ,, in the Church, 36, 49, 202 etc., 309 etc.  
 GOD, arguments for Existence of, 136 etc.  
   ,, Eternity of, 139.  
   ,, First Cause, the, 137.  
   ,, Holiness of, 140.  
   ,, Nature of, 139.  
   ,, Omnipotence of, 140.

- GOD, Omnipresence of, 141.  
 „ Omniscience of, 141.  
 „ Perfections of, 139.  
 „ Self-Existence of, 139.  
 „ the Holy Trinity, 141 etc., 148, 171, 302, 336.  
 Grace, 38, 47, 48, 237, 292, etc., 303.  
 „ covenanted, 38 etc., 48, 52.  
 „ uncovenanted, 40, 52.  
 Grades amongst the Bishops, 41 etc.  
 Gregory, Pope, 67.  
 Hadrian, 77.  
 Heaven, 217.  
 Hell, 216.  
 „ the Descent into, 180.  
 Henry VIII., 89 and note, 92.  
 Heresy, 37.  
 Hints for a First Confession, 355 etc.  
 Holy, the Church, 208.  
 HOLY SPIRIT, the, 8, 15, 36, 199 etc., 302, 309 etc.  
 „ in the Church, 36, 49, 202 etc., 309 etc.  
 „ the Seven Gifts of, 261, 262.  
 Holy Trinity, the, 141, etc., 148, 171, 302.  
 Homily on the Sacraments, 239 note.  
 Hope, 233.  
 Hours, the Canonical, 230, 231.  
 Image of GOD, 148, 149.  
 Immaculate Conception, the, 116, 159.  
 Incarnation, the, 12, 336.  
 „ the Doctrine of, 155 etc., 235 etc.  
 „ apart from the Fall, 157, 158.  
 „ the purpose of, 157, 158, 236.  
 Incense, 329 note, 332.  
 Indulgences, 83, 89, 184.  
 Infallibility of the Pope, 116.  
 Infant Baptism, 237 note, 242, 339.  
 Inspiration, 202, 309 etc.  
 Intercession of CHRIST, 195 etc.  
 „ Saints, 210 etc.  
 Intermediate State, the, 181 etc., 210, 250.  
 Interpretation of Scripture, 115 etc., 321, 322.  
 Invocation of Saints, 211, 212.  
 Iona, 70.  
 Israel, Children of, 4.  
 James, St., Bp. of Jerusalem, 30.  
 Jerusalem, Patriarchate of, 44.  
 JESUS, the Name of, 167.

- Jewish Church, the, 5.
- Jews, the, 4.
- John Baptist, St., 171.
- John, King, 78.
- Joseph, St., 162.
- „ of Arimathea, 185.
- Judgment, 181, 197, 216.
- Jurisdiction, 28, 29, 104.
- Justice, 233.
- Justification, 300.
- Kingdom of God, 12, 53, 190.
- Kneeling, 328, 335, 351.
- Lacordaire, 298.
- Laity, Priesthood of, 337, 350.
- Lambeth Conference, 119 note.
- „ Register, 99 etc.
- Last Things, the four, 215 etc.
- Laud, Archbishop, 100 note.
- Law, the Moral, 5, 7, 219.
- Lay Baptism, 39 note.
- Lights, Altar, 329 note, 332.
- Likeness of GOD, the, 148, 149.
- Lindisfarne, 71.
- Liturgies, the Early, 213.
- Liturgy of St. James, 255.
- LORD'S Prayer, the, 281 etc.
- Love, 233.
- Love-feast, 257.
- Luther, 84.
- Magnificat, the, 165.
- Man, the Creation of, 148, 235.
- „ the Fall of, 149, 236.
- Manhood taken into GOD, 235.
- Marriage, 273 etc.
- Mary, the Blessed Virgin, 156, 158 etc.
- Mary, Queen, 98, 99.
- Mass, the Sacrifice of the, 252 etc.
- Matrimony, Notes on, 343 etc.
- Melchisedec, 14, 15.
- Metropolitans, 42 etc.
- Ministry of the Church, the, 14 etc.
- Mission, the Celtic, 70 etc.
- „ the Roman, 67 etc.
- Mission of the HOLY GHOST, 201, 204.
- Missions to the heathen, 284.
- Monasteries, 85.



- Monica, St., 213.  
 Monks, the, 85.  
 Moral Law, the, 5, 7, 219.  
 Moses, 5.  
 Mother of GOD, 164 note.  
 Nag's Head Fable, 100 etc.  
 Nature of GOD, the, 139.  
 Natures, the Two, in CHRIST, 156.  
 New Birth, the, 242, 294 etc.  
 Nicæa, the Council of, 37, 56.  
 Nicene Creed, the, 37, 56, 129.  
 Noah; 4.  
 Nonjurors, iv.  
 Norman Conquest, the, 78.  
 Notable Duties, the, 229.  
 Notes of the Church. 208, 209.  
 Notes on the Church Offices, 339 etc.  
 Nunc Dimittis, the, 167,  
 Obedience, 151, 221.  
 „ of CHRIST, 178.  
 Objections to Prayer, 279 etc.  
 Oblation, Prayer of, 214, 254.  
 Old Testament, the, 4, 6, 7, 23, 312 etc.  
 Omnipotence of GOD, 140.  
 Omnipresence „ 141.  
 Omniscience „ 141.  
 Onesiphorus, 213.  
 Order, Sacrament of Holy, 271 etc.  
 Orders, Anglican, 97 etc.  
 Ordinal of Edward VI., 98, 103.  
 Ordination, 21, 32, 103.  
 Origin of Evil, the, 150 etc.  
 Original Sin, 150, 236.  
 Ornaments of the Church, 332.  
 „ „ Ministers, 332.  
 Ornaments' Rubric, the, viii., 328, 329.  
 Oswald, King, 70.  
 Oswy, King, 74.  
 Oxford Revival, the, iv., v.  
 Paradise, 55, 180.  
 Parker, Archbishop, 99 etc.  
 Passion, the, 173 etc.  
 Passover, the, 8, 169, 245, 256.  
 Patriarchal System, the, 43 etc.  
 Paulinus, 70, 243 note.  
 Penance, 214, 264 etc.

- Penitence, 268 etc.  
 Pentateuch, the, 313.  
 Pentecost, 8.  
 Perfections of GOD, the, 139.  
 Perseverance, Final, 303 etc.  
 Peter, St., Promise to, 11 note, 75.  
 Peter's Pence, 79.  
 Pious Customs, 335.  
 Pole, Cardinal, 98, 102.  
 Polycarp, St., 35.  
 Pontius Pilate, 176.  
 Prayer, 230, 277 etc.  
     ,, objections to, 279 etc.  
 Prayer Book of Edward VI., the First, 98, 275, 354 note.  
 Prayer, the LORD'S, 281 etc.  
 Prayers for the Dead, 212 etc.  
 Precepts of the Church, 234.  
 Predestination, 290 etc.  
 Presbyters, 27 note.  
 Presence, the Real, 255, 333, 335, 336, 352.  
 Priests, 25 etc.  
 Priesthood of the Laity, the, 337, 350.  
 Primates, 44.  
 Primacy of the Bishop of Rome, the, 45, 58, 93.  
 Printing, invention of, iv., 88.  
 Probation of the Angels, 147.  
     ,, Man, 149, 152.  
 Procession of THE HOLY GHOST, 201.  
 Protestant, the term, 209.  
     ,, Sects, the, 115.  
 Provincial System, the, 42 etc.  
 Provisions, 80.  
 Prudence, 233.  
 Purgatory, 84, 185.  
 Puritans, the, iii., v.  
 Real Presence, the, 255, 333, 335, 336, 352.  
 Reason, 136, 142.  
 Redemption, the, 173 etc.  
 Reformation, Causes of the, 78 etc.  
     ,, Results of the, 91 etc.  
 Regeneration, 243, 294 etc.  
 Religion, 277.  
 "Remembrance of Me," 247, 248.  
 Repentance, 268 etc.  
 Resurrection of the dead, 188, 215.  
     ,, CHRIST, 185 etc.

- Reunion of the Church, ix., 61.  
 Revelation of GOD, 138.  
 Ritual, 327 etc.  
 "Rock, upon this," II note.  
 Roman Church, foundation of, 35, 44 note.  
   ,, Court, 78 etc.  
   ,, Mission, 67 etc.  
   ,, See, iii., 78 etc., 89.  
 Rome, Patriarchate of, 43 etc.  
 Rubric, Ornaments', viii., 328, 329.  
 Rufinus, 127.  
 Rule of Faith, the, 126.  
 Sabbath, the, 8, 191.  
 Sacramental Confession, 352 etc.  
 Sacraments, the, 38, 235 etc.  
   ,, the Greater, 238, 239, 245.  
   ,, the Lesser, 238, 239.  
   ,, Institution of, 238.  
   ,, the Seven, 238.  
 Sacrament of Baptism, 242 etc.  
   ,, Confirmation, 261 etc.  
   ,, the Eucharist, 245 etc.  
   ,, Holy Order, 271 etc.  
   ,, Matrimony, 273 etc.  
   ,, Penance, 39, 264 etc, 352 etc.  
   ,, Unction, 274 etc.  
 Sacrifice, the Eucharistic, 196, 247 etc.  
   ,, of the Mass, 252 etc.  
 Safety in the Church, 50 etc., 123.  
 Saints, the Communion of, 210 etc.  
   ,, Intercession of, 210 etc.  
   ,, Invocation of, 211, 212.  
 Sanctification, 302.  
 Satan, 147, 173.  
 Satisfaction, 271.  
 Saxons, the, 66 etc.  
 Schism, 59.  
 Scripture, Holy, iv., 115 etc., 309 etc.  
 Self-denial, 231.  
 Self-Examination, Form of, 224, 355 etc.  
 Septuagint, the, 315.  
 Sermon on the Mount, 7, 229.  
 Sermons, 325, 326.  
 Sign of the Cross, the, 336, 340.  
 Sin, Actual, 223.  
   ,, Deadly, 223, 224.

---

MOWBRAY & CO.,

CHURCH PRINTERS, OXFORD.

---

## Ecclesiastical



## Metal Work.

Chalices. Patens. Credence Patens.  
Flagons. Altar Cruets.  
Pocket Communion Sets. Lavabos.  
Altar Crosses. Altar Candlesticks.  
Altar Vases. Altar Desks. Thuribles.  
Alms Dishes. Vesper Lights.  
Candle Extinguishers. Font Ewers.  
Baptismal Shells.

---

## Ecclesiastical



## Wood Work.

Altars. Crosses. Eucharisticans.  
Communion Bread Presses.  
Hymn Boards. Glastonbury Chairs.  
Candlesticks.  
Gothic Triptychs. Credence Tables.  
Alms Boxes. Banner Poles.

---

## COMMUNICANTS' MANUALS.

**HELPS TO WORSHIP.** A Manual for Holy Communion and Daily Prayer. With Recommenda- tory Notice by the late Bishop (MACKARNES) of Oxford. 231st Thousand.

Royal 32mo. Edition: Cloth boards, Red edges, 7d.; Paste grain, 2/-; Calf or Morocco, 2/6.

Ditto, with Common Prayer: Cloth boards, Red edges, 1/-; Paste grain, 2/6; Calf or Morocco, 3/-

Ditto, with Common Prayer and Hymns A. & M.: Cloth boards, Red edges, 1/4; Paste grain, 3/-; Calf or Morocco, 3/6.

Demy 18mo. Edition: Cloth, 9d.; Cloth boards, 1/-; Paste grain, 2/6; Calf or Morocco, 3/6.

**AT THE HOLY COMMUNION.** A Manual for Communicants. By REGINALD E. ADDERLEY, Tait Missioner for the Diocese of Canterbury. Cloth boards, 4d.; New and Revised Edition, 7d.

**THE COMMUNICANT'S GUIDE.** A help to the worthy reception of the Blessed Sacrament of the Body and Blood of our LORD and SAVIOUR JESUS CHRIST. Compiled by the LORD BISHOP OF ARGYLL AND THE ISLES. Cloth boards, 6d.

**A PLAIN COMMUNION BOOK.** By the Rev. E. C. DERMER, B.D., Vicar of SS. Philip and James', Oxford. Cloth boards, 6d.; Paste grain, 2/-; Calf or Morocco, 2/6.

Ditto, with Twenty-six Illustrations. Cloth boards, 1/-

**THE BREAD OF LIFE.** A Manual of Instruction and Devotion for the Blessed Sacrament. By the late Rev. A. D. CRAKE, B.A. Cloth, 1/-; Cloth boards, 1/6; Calf or Morocco, 5/-

**A BOOK OF PRAYERS FOR ALL CHURCHMEN.** Containing Morning and Evening Prayers, Advice to Communicants, Self-Examination and Preparation for Holy Communion, the Order of Service, &c. Stiff Card Wrapper, 3d.

**BEFORE THE ALTAR.** The Devout Christian's Manual for Attendance and Communion at the Holy Eucharist, Sacrifice, and Sacrament. With Devotions, Summary of Faith, Instructions, Morning and Night Prayers, and Questions for Self-Examination. 100th Thousand.

Royal 32mo. Edition : Cloth boards, 7d. ; Paste grain, 2/- ; Calf or Morocco, 2/6.

Ditto, with parts of Common Prayer—Morning and Evening Prayer, the Litany, Collects, Epistles and Gospels, and the Psalms : Cloth boards, 1/- ; Paste grain, 2/6 ; Calf or Morocco, 3/-

Ditto, with abbreviated Prayer Book, and Hymns A. & M. : Cloth boards, 1/4 ; Paste grain, 3/- ; Calf or Morocco, 3/6.

Demy 18mo. Edition (Large Type) : Cloth boards, 1/- ; Paste grain, 2/6 ; Calf or Morocco, 3/6.

Crown 32mo. (Miniature Edition), with Red Borders : Cloth boards, 1/- ; Paste grain, 2/- ; Calf or Morocco, 3/6.

**THE LORD'S SUPPER.** Short and Plain Instructions for the better understanding of the LORD's Supper, with the necessary preparation required, to which is annexed the Office of Holy Communion with Proper Helps and Directions. By THOMAS WILSON, D.D., sometime Lord Bishop of Sodor and Man. A beautiful edition, printed on a special paper with Red Borders.

Leatherette, 6d. ; Leatherette, bevelled boards, 1/4.

**THE PURE OFFERING.** An Illustrated Altar Book for the use of Young Persons, compiled by the Rev. C. S. GRUEBER. Contains Fifty-five Illustrations, the Order of Service, a Preparation and Thanksgiving, Instructions, Meditations, Prayers, Hymns, &c. Cloth boards, 2/6 ; Calf or Morocco, 6/-

**PLAIN PRAYERS** (Edition D). Contains Private Prayers, Hymns, Preparation and Devotion for Holy Communion, together with the Order of Service. Cloth, 9d.

**AIDS TO COMMUNION WITH GOD.** A Manual for Communicants, with Collects, Epistles, and Gospels. By the Rev. VERNON HUTTON, B.A. Cloth boards, 1/- ; Cloth bevelled boards, 1/6 ; Morocco, 4/-

An Edition without the Collects, Epistles, and Gospels. Cloth limp, 6d.

# The "Cowley" Portable Altar

(Registered No. 77,533),

Consists of a Case, forming, when open, a convenient place for the due and reverent Celebration of the Holy Communion, in the Sick Room, on board ship, or for Priests when travelling. The Inner Case, forming the Super-Altar, being specially constructed so as to safely carry all the necessary vessels, &c.

Polished Pitch Pine, 40/- Polished Oak, 57/6.

Polished Oak, with Carved Reredos, £3 18s. 6d.

Size, when closed, 18 x 12 x 6 inches.

*The Altars are supplied with any of the following fittings :*

Chalice and Paten.

Electro-plate, 27/6; Silver, 105/-

Cruets.

Glass, with Electro-plate mounts, 12/6; with Silver mounts, 25/- per pair.

Candlesticks.

Polished Brass, 5/- per pair.

Cross, with three steps.

Oak, 1/6; Polished Brass, 17/6.

Spoon.

Electro-plate, 7/6; Silver, 14/6.

Bread or Wafer Box.

Oak, 2/6; Electro-plate, 3/6; Silver, 35/-

Vases.

Polished Brass, 3/6 per pair.

Linen.

Fair Linen Cloth, White Embroidered Crosses, 8/6.

Corporal, Pall, and three Purificators, 7/6.

Dossal,

in either of the Ecclesiastical Colours, 8/6.

Thin Vestments also supplied.

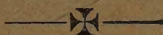


BY THE REV. VERNON STALEY.

WITH PREFACE BY THE REV. CANON T. T. CARTER.

*Price 2s. 6d.*

# Plain Words on the Holy Catholic Church.



BX  
5139  
S8  
1894

Staley, Vernon, b.1852.

The Catholic religion; a man-  
tion for members of the Anglic  
a preface by T.T. Carter. 4th  
Mowbray; New York, J. Pott, 18  
xxiii, 397p. illus. 16cm.

1. Church of England--Catech  
I. Title.



A8721

SKEFFINGTON & SON, PICCADILLY, W.

A8721

